English Phrasal Verbs in Use

70 units of vocabulary reference and practice
Self-study and classroom use

Michael McCarthy
Felicity O'Dell
Contents

Acknowledgements 3
Using this book 4

Learning about phrasal verbs
1 Phrasal verbs: the basics
2 Phrasal verbs: what they mean
3 Particles in phrasal verbs
4 Nouns and adjectives based on phrasal verbs
5 Metaphor and register

Key verbs
6 Come
7 Get
8 Go
9 Look
10 Make
11 Put
12 Take

Key particles
13 Up
14 On
15 Off
16 On and in
17 Down and over
18 Around and about
19 For and with
20 Through and back
21 Into and away

Concepts
22 Time: spending time
23 Time: passing of time
24 Location
25 Cause and effect
26 Change
27 Success and failure
28 Starting and finishing
29 Actions and movement
30 Destroying and reacting to destruction
31 Communication

Functions
32 Describing people and places
33 Describing public events
34 Describing situations
35 Giving and getting information
36 Solving problems

English Phrasal Verbs in Use
| 37  | Decisions and plans          |
| 38  | Disagreeing                 |
| 39  | Persuading                  |
| 40  | Praising and criticising    |
| 41  | Exclamations and warnings   |

**Work, study and finance**

| 42  | The classroom and learning  |
| 43  | Student life: courses and exams |
| 44  | Student life: reading and writing |
| 45  | Work: jobs and career       |
| 46  | Work: being busy            |
| 47  | Money: salaries, bills, payments |
| 48  | Money: buying and selling   |
| 49  | Business                    |
| 50  | Telephoning                 |

**Personal life**

| 51  | Feelings                    |
| 52  | Relationships               |
| 53  | Relationships: problems     |
| 54  | Secrets and conversations   |
| 55  | Stages through life         |
| 56  | Health                      |
| 57  | Sport                       |
| 58  | Homes and daily routines    |
| 59  | Socialising                 |
| 60  | Food and drink              |

**The world around us**

| 61  | Weather                     |
| 62  | Travel                      |
| 63  | Driving                     |
| 64  | Technology                  |
| 65  | Computers                   |
| 66  | News                        |
| 67  | Crime                       |
| 68  | Power and authority         |
| 69  | American and Australian phrasal verbs |
| 70  | New phrasal verbs           |

Key 146

Mini dictionary 183
Acknowledgements

This book, like all our other books in the In Use series, is the result of the work of many people. Cambridge University Press editors, reviewers, designers, marketing staff, sales and publicity staff have all contributed their advice and expertise, and there are just too many to name individually here. Particular thanks must, however, go to the following two people at Cambridge University Press: Nóirín Burke, whose expertise and vision have guided us throughout the writing of this book, and Martine Walsh, who has steered the project from its beginnings through to publication with consistent insight and thoroughness. We are very grateful to them both. We also owe a great deal to the Cambridge University Press lexicographers who worked with the Cambridge International Corpus to produce the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. We drew heavily on the database of this dictionary when selecting verbs to include in this book and when compiling the Mini-dictionary at the back of this book.

We have also received invaluable feedback from both teacher and student reviewers. Their comments have had a great influence on the final manuscript and we are very grateful to them.

In particular we would like to thank the following teachers, students and institutions from all over the world who reviewed and piloted the material throughout its development:

Kristi Alcouffe, Bonelles, France
Margarida Bussatos, Sao Paulo, Brazil
Philippe Butet, Paris, France
Gill Hamilton, Valencia, Spain
Olga Vinogradova, Moscow, Russia
Marilyn Woolf, London, UK
Kevin Rutherford, Warsaw, Poland
Julie Moore, Cambridge, UK
Eilwen David, Munich, Germany
Ewa Modrzejewska, Gdynia, Poland
Yuri Hara, Tokyo, Japan

Finally, as always, we would like to thank our domestic partners and loved ones for their unfailing support while we were taken up with this project.

Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell

The development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge International Corpus (CIC). The CIC is a computerised database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at 600 million words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with the University of Cambridge ESOL Examinations. Cambridge University Press has built up the CIC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Why was this book written?

It was written to help you improve your knowledge of phrasal verbs in English. Phrasal verbs are verbs which have a main verb and a particle which, together, create one meaning (e.g. a plane taken off from the airport; an adult books after a child). You will come across a great many phrasal verbs when you listen to and read English, and so it is important that you learn about their meanings and how they are used. You can use this book either with a teacher or for self-study.

There are more than 5,000 phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms in use in English. This book focuses just on those phrasal verbs which you need to know for everyday spoken and written communication in English, and it aims to provide the information and practice which will help you understand and use them correctly.

How were the phrasal verbs in the book selected?

The approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms which are presented in this book were all selected from those identified as significant by the CANCODE corpus of spoken English, developed at the University of Nottingham in association with Cambridge University Press and the Cambridge International Corpus of written and spoken English. The phrasal verbs selected are also to be found in the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs, where additional example sentences and usage notes will also be found. You can search this dictionary online by going to the following website: dictionary.cambridge.org

How is the book organised?

The book has 70 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the phrasal verbs that are presented in the unit. You will usually find an explanation of the meaning of each phrasal verb, an example of it in use, and, where appropriate, any special notes about its usage. The right-hand page checks that you have understood the information on the left-hand page by giving you a series of exercises that practise the material just presented. The exercises pay particular attention to checking understanding of the phrasal verbs and how they are used, so that you will be able to use them accurately and appropriately.

The units are organised into different sections:

First we start with important information about phrasal verbs in general (Units 1–5): what they are, how their grammar works, and so on. This is an important training section, and we recommend you do these units first.

After the introductory units, there are units on the most common verbs which are used to form phrasal verbs (Units 6–12) and units on the most common particles found in phrasal verbs (Units 13–21).

The rest of the book teaches you the phrasal verbs which are associated with particular concepts (e.g. time), functions (e.g. giving and getting information) and topics (e.g. business, feelings, student life).

The book also has a key to all the exercises so that you can check your answers. At the back of this book you will find a useful Mini-dictionary. This provides clear definitions of all the phrasal verbs and related noun and adjective forms that appear in this book. The Mini-dictionary also indicates the unit number where you can find a particular phrasal verb.
**How should I use this book?**

It is strongly recommended that you work through Units 1–5 first so that you become familiar with the way phrasal verbs operate and with the terminology that is used in the rest of the book. After that, you may work on the units in any order that suits you.

**What else do I need in order to work with this book?**

You need a notebook or file in which you can write down the phrasal verbs that you study in this book as well as any others that you come across elsewhere.

You also need to have access to a good dictionary. We strongly recommend the *Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs* as this gives exactly the kind of information that you need to have about phrasal verbs. Your teacher, however, may also be able to recommend other dictionaries that you will find useful.

So, we hope that this book will help you understand and use new or difficult phrasal verbs that *crop up* (see Unit 44 – Student life: reading and writing) in your reading and listening in English and that, by the time you finish the units, you’ll be saying: ‘English phrasal verbs? Show me a new one and I’ll figure out what it means in seconds!’ (see Unit 69 – American and Australian phrasal verbs).
Phrasal verbs: the basics

What are phrasal verbs?
Phrasal verbs are verbs that consist of a verb and a particle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>particle</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>You can look up any new words in your dictionary.</td>
<td>You can find the meaning of any new words in your dictionary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>I tried to phone her but I couldn’t get through.</td>
<td>I tried to phone her but I couldn’t get a connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>I just can’t make Jim out at all.</td>
<td>I just can’t understand Jim’s behaviour.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Particles are small words which you already know as prepositions or adverbs. Here are some of the most common phrasal verb particles: about (a)round at away back down for in into off on out over through to up

What do I need to know about phrasal verbs?
First you need to know the meaning of the whole phrasal verb as a unit. The Mini dictionary in this book will help you. For example, look means to use your eyes and up means the opposite of down, but the phrasal verb look up can have several different meanings:

Look up the dictionary. [look up = search for information in a book/computer]
I’ll look you up next time I’m in London. [look up = visit someone you have not seen for a long time] Things are looking up. [look up = improve]

Next you need to know the grammar patterns of phrasal verbs, e.g. whether the verb takes an object. The table shows the way the grammar patterns are shown in this book and in many dictionaries. Note that sth means something; sb means someone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>grammar pattern</th>
<th>comment</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat out</td>
<td>the verb is used without an object</td>
<td>We were too tired to cook at home so we decided to eat out (eat in a restaurant) Not: We decided to eat out a meal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring back sth</td>
<td>the verb must have a non-human object</td>
<td>This photograph brings back happy memories. [makes me remember or think about something from the past] Not: This photograph brings back my-sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring in sth</td>
<td>the verb must have a human object</td>
<td>I’d love to ask Sally out. [invite Sally to go to a place like a cinema or a restaurant] Not: I’d love to ask my-dog out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask sb out</td>
<td>the verb must have a human object</td>
<td>I’ll look after the baby while you’re cooking. Will you look after my bike while I’m away?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask sb in</td>
<td></td>
<td>I’ll ring you back later. [phone you again] Not: I’ll ring you back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after sth</td>
<td>the object must come before the particle</td>
<td>Can you look after the dog while I’m away? Not: Can you look after the dog after while I’m away?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after sth</td>
<td></td>
<td>I dropped off the package at her house. [delivered/left] I dropped the package off at her house.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

1.1 Underline the twelve phrasal verbs in these sentences.
1. I sent off the order last week but the goods haven’t turned up yet.
2. I came across an interesting book in the library. I took down the title. Here it is.
3. We asked some friends around to watch a film, but the video was playing up and it eventually broke down.
4. I brought up this problem at the last meeting. It’s really time to sort out the problem.
5. I wish he’d stop messing us about! He’s put the meeting off three times and now he wants to call it off altogether.

1.2 Match the twelve phrasal verbs from sentences 1–5 in exercise 1.1 above with their meanings from the box below.

cause inconvenience deal with stop working find invite home arrive
post cancel write postpone nec work properly mention

1.3 Decide which of these sentences contain errors. Explain why they are wrong and suggest a correct answer. Use the table in B to help you.
1. That song you just sang brings back memories of my days at college.
2. She looked the children after when their mother was in hospital.
3. I promised to ring my brother back. He called earlier when I was busy.
4. We ate out a wonderful dinner last night.
5. It was a beautiful summer evening so I asked the cat out for a drink.

1.4 Sometimes phrasal verbs are followed by a particular preposition to make three-part verbs. Try to learn these prepositions with the phrasal verbs. Look at these examples of three-part verbs, then complete the sentences below with a preposition from the box. Use a dictionary or the Mini dictionary at the back of this book if necessary.

EXAMPLES: I’m looking forward to the weekend.
She’s been going out with him for six months now.

with against with on wish

1. She seems to look down people who are less intelligent than her.
2. The school decided to do away the language lab as no-one was using it.
3. I came up a serious problem when I tried to save my work onto a disk.
4. How can some students get away doing no work and yet pass the exams?
5. Her son is so horrible. I don’t know how she puts up him.

That’s not what I meant when I said, “Can you drop me off at the beach, please?”

English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Phrasal verbs: what they mean

The most common verbs
Here are the most common verbs that form part of phrasal verbs:
break | bring | call | come | cut | give | go | keep | knock
look | make | pass | pick | pull | put | run | set | take | turn
Units 6–12 deal with a selection of these verbs which form a large number of useful, everyday phrasal verbs.

B Meanings
The basic meanings of the verbs in A refer to concrete actions (e.g. break means separate into pieces), but when they are part of phrasal verbs, they often have abstract meanings too. Sometimes the concrete meaning can help you guess the abstract meaning. For example, you can look back to wave goodbye to someone as you leave in a car (concrete meaning – look behind you), or you can look back on your past life (abstract meaning – remember or recall).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>concrete meaning</th>
<th>abstract meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>I gave my essay in yesterday [handed it to the teacher]</td>
<td>Her parents finally gave in and let her go to the party [agreed to something they had refused before]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>She got on the bus. [entered]</td>
<td>Jim and Mary don’t get on. [don’t like each other and are not friendly to each other]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>Would you like to come round this evening? [come to my home]</td>
<td>He was unconscious for three hours but came round in hospital [became conscious again]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Synonyms of phrasal verbs
A phrasal verb can often be replaced by a single verb with more or less the same meaning. The single-verb synonyms are often, but not always, more formal (see Unit 5, section C).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>single-verb synonym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>postpone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn up</td>
<td>arrive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>less formal</th>
<th>more formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Let’s put off the meeting until Friday.</td>
<td>Let’s postpone the meeting until Friday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please take off your shoes when you enter the temple.</td>
<td>Please remove your shoes when you enter the temple.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everyone turned up on time for the meeting.</td>
<td>Everyone arrived on time for the meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you know a single-verb synonym of a phrasal verb, write it in your vocabulary notebook, and note whether or not the phrasal verb is more informal.
Exercises

2.1 Complete these sentences using verbs from the list in A opposite.
1 The car b______________ down on the way to the airport.
2 The heavy snow blocked the roads and c______________ the farm off completely.
3 It took him a long time to g______________ over his illness.
4 It isn’t easy to learn German but you must k______________ on trying.
5 If you’d like a lift to the station tomorrow, I can p______________ you up at 9 a.m.
6 This is a really stupid programme. Please r______________ the TV off.

2.2 In which of the sentences in exercise 2.1 above could you put the particle in a different position?

2.3 Decide whether the phrasal verbs in these sentences are concrete or abstract in meaning, by writing C for concrete or A for abstract in the brackets.

EXAMPLE He looked up (C) and saw a hot-air balloon in the sky.
1 I would never go against (A) my parents’ wishes.
2 Shall I cut out (A) this ad for the new CD player? We might want to buy one.
3 About five miles into our journey the engine cut out (A) and we broke down (C) completely. It was over an hour before the rescue service turned up (A).
4 Do we need to dress up (A) tonight or is it informal?
5 I shall never really appreciate what my grandparents went through (A) during the war.

2.4 Replace the underlined verbs in these sentences with phrasal verbs made using the verbs and particles from the boxes below. If necessary, use the Mini dictionary at the end of this book.

make chase brush leave fall up for out aside out

1 They just ignored my complaints; it made me very angry.
2 I believed his story about having lost all his money. How stupid I was!
3 I couldn’t understand what he was saying with all the noise.
4 Could you pursue Janet’s report? She promised it last week but I haven’t seen it yet.
5 If you are phoning from outside the country, omit the first zero in the city code.

2.5 Use more formal equivalents from the box instead of the phrasal verbs in these sentences. Write the formal verbs in the correct form.

decline issue organise cancel escape

1 The government have put out a statement condemning the recent protests.
2 The union accepted the new pay deal and called off the strike.
3 The number of people not owning a TV set nowadays has gone down dramatically.
4 There was a disturbance in Blackmoor Prison yesterday and three prisoners got away.
5 Could you see to lunch for our visitors? There will be four of them.
Particles in phrasal verbs

This unit looks at the role of particles in phrasal verbs. A particle is either a preposition (e.g., from, to, with) or an adverb (e.g., out, up, about). You can create phrasal verbs by adding different particles to a basic verb.

A What do particles mean?
In some phrasal verbs the particle has a clear basic meaning. Look at the examples of different particles used with the verb invite. On the right, in speech bubbles, you can see what the original speaker probably said.

- Jack invited me out.  
  Let's go out together.

- Rosie invited me in.  
  Please come in.

- Jill invited me over.  
  Come to our place.

- Paul invited me round.  
  Come to my house for dinner or a drink.

- Mark invited me up.  
  Come upstairs to my flat.

- Susie invited me along.  
  Come with us.

- Bill invited me back.  
  Come back home with me.

B What other meanings can particles have?
Most particles convey a number of different senses. For example, over can have various meanings, including:

(a) changing position, e.g. in fall over [fall to the ground] or move over [change the place where you are sitting or standing to make room for someone else].

(b) an idea of thoroughness, e.g. in read over [read thoroughly] or talk over [discuss something thoroughly before making a decision].

The meanings of particles are looked at in more detail in Units 13–21.

C Where does the particle go?
With verbs that have an object:

- Sometimes the particle has to go before the object of the verb, e.g. I'm looking for my keys (not: I'm looking my keys for).

- Sometimes it must go after the object, e.g. I have a lot of work on (not: I have on a lot of work).

- Sometimes the particle may go either before or after the object, e.g. The thunder woke the children up or The thunder woke the children up.

Note that if the object is a pronoun (e.g., him, them), then the particle must go after it, e.g. The thunder woke them up (not: The thunder woke up them).
Exercises

3.1 Look at section A and then answer the questions about these sentences.
1 My brothers were going to the circus and they asked me along.
   Did the speaker go to the circus on her own, with her brothers or do we not know for sure?
2 When I took Di a birthday present, she asked me in but I had to get to my lecture.
   Did the speaker go into Di's house?
3 When I saw Mark on the balcony, he asked me up.
   Who was in a higher position, Mark or the speaker?
4 When the Richardsons asked me back after the concert I was happy to accept.
   Where did the speaker go after the concert?
5 My cousin has asked me to go over to his flat this evening.
   What word could replace over with no change in meaning?

3.2 Look at B opposite. Are the phrasal verbs underlined in the sentences below examples of the
(a) or the (b) meanings of over?
1 Think it over before you make up your mind what to do next.
2 You may turn over the page now and read the exam questions.
3 It's raining too hard to drive. Pull over to the edge of the road.
4 Look over your answers before the end of the exam.

3.3 Look at C opposite. Then read these definitions and decide whether the sentences below are
correct or incorrect. If necessary, correct them.

1 I have on three important meetings tomorrow.
2 John has an amazing tie on.
3 Sue was only having on her sisters when she told them she was planning to become a model.
4 I'm having a lot of work on today.
5 I don't believe you! I'm sure you're having me on.
6 Ruth was wearing her new jeans this morning and she had on them yesterday.

3.4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
1 to / you / for / make room / Can / move / over / your sister?
2 finished / she / over / Harry / is / to read / When / her essay, / asked / Jill
3 his house / tomorrow. / Jim / back / me / has invited / to
4 when he / Paul / his driving test, / his parents / he'd failed / only having / was / told them / on
5 tomorrow? / What / you / on / do / have
6 the light / in her bedroom, / was / she / at home. / Sue / had / I knew / on / so
Nouns and adjectives based on phrasal verbs

A Nouns made from verb + particle
In English we often create nouns from verbs, e.g. to invite an invitation. In the same way it is sometimes possible to create a noun from a phrasal verb. Look at these examples.

Tom: I got ripped off when I phoned that 0877 number [informal: was charged too much].
The call cost five pounds a minute!
Lily: Yes, those numbers are a big rip-off.
Mina: Her son dropped out of college last year. [gave up his course]
Ed: Mm. There were a lot of dropouts that year. I wonder why?
Mick: Somebody broke in last night and stole a computer from the school. [entered by force to steal something]
Fat: Really? That’s the second break-in this year!

*Rules for the use of verb + particle noun forms*
- The plural is formed by adding -s to the particle, not the verb, e.g. break-ins, rip-offs (not: breaks-in, dropouts, rip-offs) An exception is goings-on [strange or amusing events], which’s always plural.
- There was a lot of gossip about the goings-on at the office party.
- Verb + particle noun forms are sometimes written with a hyphen, e.g. break-in, check-in, handout, changeover, look-up, run-over.
- Nouns with -out and -over are usually written as one word, e.g. dropout, checkout, handout, lookout, checkout, handout, changeover, lookers.
- Nouns with -in, -up and less common particles usually have a hyphen, e.g. lie-in, mix-up, put-down, run-through.
- In pronunciation, the stress is on the verb, not the particle. a BREAK-in at the office college DROP-outs

B Nouns made from particle + verb
Some phrasal verbs have noun forms where the particle is first. The stress in pronunciation is usually on the particle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>particle + verb noun</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>set out</td>
<td>outset</td>
<td>I knew from the outset that there would be problems. [beginning]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall down</td>
<td>downfall</td>
<td>The economic crisis caused the downfall of the government. [sudden failure or end]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look on</td>
<td>onlooker</td>
<td>Crowds of onlookers watched as the police arrested the man. [someone who watches an event but doesn’t take part]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Adjectives
There are also adjectives which are based on phrasal verbs. Make a note of any you meet. e.g. a broken-down vehicle [vehicle whose engine had stopped working] a breakdown truck [truck which helps drivers who have broken down] blocked-up drains [drains where the water cannot flow properly]
Exercises

4.1 Complete the following table. If a noun form does not exist, write ‘none’ in the table. Use a dictionary if necessary. Decide whether the noun is written with a hyphen or as one word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>verb + particle noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show off</td>
<td>show off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm up</td>
<td>warm up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on</td>
<td>get on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide out</td>
<td>hide out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn over</td>
<td>turn over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear down</td>
<td>tear down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.2 Circle the correct noun form in these sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.
1. There was a big pile-up / up-pile on the motorway involving five vehicles.
2. The government has announced a series of backcuts / cutbacks in funding for universities in order to save money.
3. When the higher taxes were announced there was a public outcry / cryout.
4. Several standers / bystanders did nothing while the thieves robbed him of his cash.

4.3 Complete these sentences with adjective forms of phrasal verbs from the box below.

throwaway, outgoing, hygone, getaway, off-putting

1. The robbers abandoned their throwaway car in a car park near the airport.
2. I find his manner very outgoing. He’s so unfriendly.
3. They decided to use off-putting paper plates and cups for their party.
4. Let’s invite Sally – she’s very getaway and loves parties.
5. The pictures of the steam trains were like something from a getgone era.

4.4 Write down the infinitive form of the phrasal verbs from which the adjectives in exercise 4.3 above are formed.

4.5 Match the sentences on the left with a suitable response on the right.

1. I was looking for a way to turn off the photocopier.
   I know, I need to watch my outgoings.
2. Have you heard about the scandal in the office?
   Yes, but I don’t understand the input.
3. The economy is not doing so well these days.
   There’s the on/off switch.
4. A database can organise all the information you type into it.
   Yes, there’s been a downturn.
5. You have to consider how much you spend each month.
   Mmm, amazing goings-on!
Metaphor and register

Multiple meanings of phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb can have a number of different meanings, e.g.

He got on the bus. [entered the bus] Jim and Jan get on really well. [like each other and are friendly]

Shh! I’m trying to get on with my work. [continue doing my work]

Often there is no direct connection between the various meanings and you just have to learn each different meaning of the phrasal verb. The best way to do this is by trying to remember a sentence using the phrasal verb.

Literal and metaphorical meaning

Sometimes the basic meanings of a phrasal verb and the additional meanings are clearly linked. This is because some additional meanings are based on a metaphor or image which has a direct connection with its literal or basic meaning. A metaphor is a way of expressing something by comparing it with something else that has similar characteristics. Here is an example:

**LITERAL (BASIC) MEANING**

blow up a balloon inflate or fill with air

**METAPHORICAL MEANING**

blow up a building make it explode

someone blows up suddenly becomes very angry

Sometimes a phrasal verb only exists as a phrasal verb in the metaphorical meaning, but you can guess what it means from the meaning of the basic verb without the particle. For example: These statistics look strange. Have we slipped up somewhere? Here slip up [make a mistake] clearly comes from slip [fall usually because the floor is wet or the ground is icy]

Register

Another important aspect of phrasal verbs is register. Phrasal verbs are typical of spoken English or informal writing, e.g. letters to friends and articles in popular journalism. There are often one-word equivalents, or synonyms, for use in a more formal spoken or written style. For example: miss out a question or omit a question. See section 2C in Unit 2 for other examples.

As with all English vocabulary, there are some different uses from one geographical area to another. For example, British, American and Australian users of English all talk of clearing up a room [putting things away tidily], but only British and Australian speakers would use tidy up as a synonym.

See Unit 69 for more examples of how phrasal verbs differ in North America and Australia.
5.1 Match the different meanings a–f of *take in* with the appropriate sentences 1–6 below.

a) make smaller
b) allow in through a hole
c) deceive
d) give a bed to
e) include
f) understand the meaning or importance

1 Because so many passengers were stranded at the airport, some local families offered to take them in overnight.
2 The news is so shocking – I still can't take it in.
3 The excursion will take in two of the most beautiful castles in the region.
4 Marie has lost weight – she's going to have to take in a lot of her clothes.
5 Rob was totally dishonest but he was so charming that I was taken in by him.
6 We'd better return to the shore at once – the boat seems to be taking in water.

5.2 These pairs of sentences show phrasal verbs which can be used in both literal and metaphorical ways. Explain the two meanings and the connection between them.

1 a) I stepped in a puddle of water and my feet are soaking now.
   b) She stepped in to stop the argument from becoming more serious.
2 a) This programme is rubbish. I wish you'd switch off the TV.
   b) The lecture was so boring that I switched off.
3 a) There's a hole in my bag. I think my pen must have dropped out.
   b) He dropped out of college and became a mechanic.
4 a) We tied the boxes down on the roof of the car.
   b) Mark dreams of travelling but he feels tied down by his family and work responsibilities.

5.3 Use your knowledge of the basic verb in the underlined phrasal verbs as well as the context of the sentence in order to work out the meanings of the phrasal verbs.

1 What are you *driving at*? I wish you would say exactly what you mean!
2 The teacher did all she could to *drum* the vocabulary into her pupils before the exam.
3 The old education system used to *cream off* the best pupils and teach them in separate schools.
4 The noise of the children’s music completely *drowned out* the television.

5.4 Write a one-word formal equivalent for each of the underlined phrasal verbs.

As the rain didn’t let *up*, the football game was *called off*. So the team got down to discussing its strategy for the next match instead. We didn’t get *out of* the clubhouse until the cleaners *turned up* in the evening.

*If you encounter a phrasal verb but you thought you knew but it does not seem to make sense, use other clues in the context to work out what the meaning might be. It may be quite different from the meaning that you already knew.*

*English Phrasal Verbs in Use* 15
Come expressing an idea of movement or change of state

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase/verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come along</td>
<td>arrive at a place</td>
<td>Not many people bought tickets for the concert in advance, but quite a few came along and bought tickets at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come apart</td>
<td>separate into pieces</td>
<td>The antique picture frame just came apart in my hands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come around or</td>
<td>become conscious again</td>
<td>A nurse woke me when I came round after the operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come round</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>disappear or become less strong (of dry or colour on clothing/material)</td>
<td>Let your shirt soak overnight and the stain will probably come out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>become public knowledge after it has been kept secret (of the truth)</td>
<td>If this story comes out about the Prime Minister, he'll have to resign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>be given to people (of results or information)</td>
<td>When do your exam results come out?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>leave after a period in a place (of hospital/prison)</td>
<td>Jane's coming out of hospital at the weekend. She's much better now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Come expressing an idea of happen

I was planning to arrange a surprise holiday for her birthday, but I'm not sure it's going to come off. [happen successfully or as planned]

I've had to organise the school fair again this year - I'm not quite sure how that came about. [happened, especially something which is not planned]

Dennis: Will you tell your boss about your plans to stand for the local council?
Norma: Only if the subject comes up1 in conversation. I nearly told him at work this morning, but then something came up2 and we had to deal with it straightaway.

Mind you, I don't know if a place on the council is going to come up3 for a while yet, so perhaps I'll wait.

1 is mentioned or discussed
2 happened unexpectedly, usually a problem or difficult situation
3 become available

Other meanings of come

I am doing a research project for my degree on the psychology of ageing, but I've come up against4 a few problems. I came across someone who's done an almost identical study, so I've got to come to5 a decision: do I want to continue with it or not? I guess in the end my decision will come down to6 what my professor recommends.

1 encountered or had to deal with (a difficult situation)
2 discovered (or met) by chance
3 make (a decision about something)
4 depend mostly on or be influenced most by

16 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Exercises

6.1 Complete these sentences with a particle from A opposite.

1. Do you have any glue? The cover of my address book is coming ........................... and I want to stick it together again.
2. I spill some orange juice on the tablecloth. Do you think it will come ................................ if I put it in the washing machine?
3. The last thing I remember was feeling very dizzy. The next thing I knew, I came .......................... in hospital and a doctor was standing by my bed.
4. The government is going to release a report on traffic congestion. I wonder when it's coming ..........................
5. We were just chatting at the corner when Jim Gore came ........................ with his girlfriend.
6. I hear Bruce's operation was successful. When is he coming ................................ of the clinic?
7. Some very shocking facts have come ........................ about government corruption, thanks to an investigation by a national newspaper.

6.2 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.

Anne: We lost everybody's e-mail address and had to start all over again.
Ken: Really? How did that ..........................................................?
Anne: Oh, it was some computer virus.

2. Rick: David keeps saying he's going to sail around the world.
Ivan: Huh! Do you think it will ever ..................................................?
Rick: Probably not. He's such a dreamer.

3. Brian: We'll let you know what we decide. We'll phone you.
Fran: When do you think you'll ........................................................?
Brian: Probably at the meeting on Friday.

4. Olga: I thought you were coming to the dinner party last night.
Ulla: Yes, I was intending to, but right at the last minute something ............................................
Olga: Oh, I see. Well, you must come next time.

6.3 Rewrite the underlined words in these horoscopes, using phrasal verbs with come.

SCORPIO

You may have to deal with a few problems at work today, but don't worry, they're only temporary, and a new job opportunity will arise which could change your life. The name of an old friend is mentioned in conversation, bringing back powerful memories.

TAURUS

You will meet someone by pure chance who seems to share the same world view as you. But be careful, they are not what they seem to be. Don't forget that in the end, true love is mainly about finding someone you can trust.

Horoscopes are often good places to find everyday, informal phrasal verbs. Read your horoscope regularly in an English newspaper or magazine, even if you don't believe it, and note down any phrasal verbs.
A Learning phrasal verbs in pairs associated with a context

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verbs</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get together</td>
<td>If two or more people get together, they meet in order to do something or spend time together.</td>
<td>It's nice to get together with people you get on with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on</td>
<td>If two or more people get on, they like each other and are friendly to each other.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on (often + with)</td>
<td>continue doing something, especially work or when payments are made.</td>
<td>I must get on with my work. I got behind because I spent too much time on the Internet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get behind</td>
<td>If you get behind with work or wish payments, you have not done as much work or paid as much as you should by a particular time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sth over with</td>
<td>do and complete something difficult or unpleasant that must be done.</td>
<td>Let's get this meeting over with. Or else we'll never get away before the rush hour and it will take ages to get home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get away</td>
<td>leave a place or person, often when the situation makes it difficult for you to do so.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't/couldn't</td>
<td>be very surprised or shocked that something has happened or that something is true.</td>
<td>I can't get over how she manages to get away with doing so little work. It's obvious to everyone, but the boss never seems to notice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get over sth</td>
<td>succeed in not being criticised or punished for something wrong that you have done.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B More phrasal verbs with get

Gerry: How do you manage to survive without a job?
Kimberly: Oh, I get by with a bit of help from my parents. [have just enough money to pay for the things I need, but nothing more]

Lauren: The problem is that the regulations don't allow us to use next year's budget.
Juliet: Oh, don't worry. We'll get around/round it somehow. [find a way of dealing with or avoiding a problem]

Yanis: Have you rung the travel agent's yet to confirm our bookings?
Ronan: Sorry, I haven't got around/round to it yet, but I'll do it after lunch, I promise. [do something that you have intended to do for a long time]

Polly: I really think you ought to apologise to you-know-who about you-know-what.
Ivan: I'm sorry, I don't know what you're getting at. Who? What? [If you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have said something indirectly.]

Ellen: Do you think I can get away with not using any handouts in my lecture? [do something successfully even though it is nor the best way of doing it]
Lou: Yes, the students just throw them away anyway.
Exercises

7.1 Choose the correct particle to complete these sentences.

1. Why don’t you get your homework \_______________________\ with so you can enjoy the rest of the evening?
   a) around b) over c) by d) away

2. As soon as Sue and I met, we knew we were going to get \_______________________\ well.
   a) round b) at c) on d) up

3. I just can’t come out with you tonight as I’ve got so \_______________________\ with my work.
   a) up b) over c) away d) behind

4. Why does Rita always get \_______________________\ with arriving late? It doesn’t seem fair.
   a) by b) away c) on d) over

5. I’m going to have to get \_______________________\ to filling in my tax form soon.
   a) round b) over c) away d) behind

6. I hope you’ll be able to get \_______________________\ from work at a reasonable time tonight.
   a) away b) behind c) at d) over

7. Your mother couldn’t get \_______________________\ the core of restaurants in London.
   a) up b) round c) by d) over

7.2 Match each question on the left with the most likely response on the right.

1. How do you and Joe get on? I manage somehow, though it isn’t easy.
2. What exactly are you getting at? I just wasn’t organised enough.
3. How do you get by on a student grant? Sure, that would be nice.
5. When are you going to get round to it? Let me put it another way for you.
6. Shall we get together this evening? We’re great friends.
7. Will you manage to get away soon? Soon, I promise.

7.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Make any other necessary changes.

1. I’ve been planning to sort out my files but I haven’t found time to do it yet.
2. I can’t believe how much money they spent on their New Year’s party.
3. Don’t try to travel without paying your train fare – an inspector might come on and want to see your ticket.
4. The teachers in the school often meet after work on Fridays in a café near the school.
5. They avoided the problem of offending anyone and just invited all their friends to the wedding.
6. I usually find it quite hard to understand what Professor Macriff is trying to say in his lectures.
7. I hope no one will mind if I don’t send any Christmas cards this year.
8. Emily has not done nearly as much work on her thesis as she should have done by now.

Learning verbs in pairs associated with a particular context can help you remember them. Look again at all the phrasal verbs on the opposite page. Try to make different pairs and write them in sentences putting them in context, as in section A.
**Amelia's story**

Amelia has been going through a difficult time at work, so she decided to cheer herself up by going in for a competition. The prize was a luxury holiday in the Caribbean. Amelia had to go without a holiday for several years now, so she really wanted to win. The competition was to write a story beginning "Suddenly the lights went out..." The problem was that Amelia couldn't think of an idea for her story.

"How can I go about getting a good idea?" she asked me. "It must be something special so that the judges go for my story over all the others." I suggested she went to the library to go through some books of short stories - she might get some ideas there. So she went off to see what she could find.

She soon found some good stories. She read one and then another and then she went on reading all afternoon. Then she noticed a strange smell and suddenly the lights went out. She looked up and saw that the library was on fire. Of course, that gave her the idea for her story. I hope she won.

---

**Some more phrasal verbs with go**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go along with</td>
<td>support an idea, or agree with someone's opinion</td>
<td>Whatever you say, Maggie will go along with you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>continue to exist or happen</td>
<td>It went on raining all day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>happen</td>
<td>There's a police car outside the shop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go through with</td>
<td>do something unpleasant or difficult, which you planned or promised to do</td>
<td>I don't want to do the exam now but I'll better go through with it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go together</td>
<td>if two types of thing or people go together, they are usually found with each other</td>
<td>A bad cough and a sore throat often go together.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Many of the very common English phrasal verbs, for example those in Units 6-13, have several different meanings when combined with one particle. There are a few different meanings on this page for go on and go through; however there are other possible meanings for both of these verbs and particle combinations. Remember this if you meet a phrasal verb in a new or unusual context because it may have quite a different meaning from one you are more familiar with.
Exercises

8.1 Complete the text below using the correct particles from the phrasal verbs in A opposite.

I was going __________________ (1) some old letters the other day when I found one from my friend, Nancy. After high school she had gone __________________ (2) to train as a doctor and ended up in Africa. She had to go __________________ (3) years of very hard study before she qualified. Life in Africa was not as comfortable as it was in our hometown, and there were many things she had to go __________________ (4) which the rest of us think of as necessities in our daily lives. But despite all the hardships, she went __________________ (5) working and helping people less fortunate than herself. I admire her so much. I wondered how I might go __________________ (6) making contact with her again, as I have no idea where she is living now.

8.2 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs with go so that they keep the same meaning.
1 I’m thinking of competing in the New York Marathon next year.
2 There were some difficult times in my father’s life.
3 Unemployment and high crime levels often exist side by side.
4 He decided to undergo the operation even though there were risks.
5 I refused to support their decision to close the youth club.
6 I didn’t realise how late it was and I didn’t stop studying till after midnight.
7 We had to survive with no hot water for 24 hours while they were repairing the pipes.
8 Do you think I should try the advanced level exam? It might be too difficult.
9 She just left without saying goodbye. I wonder if I offended her?
10 What was happening in the staffroom at lunchtime? I heard someone shouting.

8.3 In these sentences, some of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page are used with new meanings. Choose the correct paraphrase. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 We had to throw the fish away as it had gone off.
   a) Someone had switched off the oven.
   b) The fish had become bad because we kept it too long.
   c) The fish had fallen off the table on to the floor.
2 I wish you wouldn’t go on about your problems all the time! I have problems too, you know!
   a) I wish you wouldn’t think obsessively.
   b) I wish you wouldn’t be very secretive.
   c) I wish you wouldn’t talk constantly.
3 She’s been going about telling everyone I want to marry her.
   a) She’s been thinking of telling everyone.
   b) She’s on the point of telling everyone.
   c) She has told everyone.
4 Ask her to dance with you. Go on!
   a) Continue doing what you’re doing.
   b) Step on to the dance floor.
   c) Do it now, don’t hesitate.

FOLLOW UP

The verb go on has a noun and an adjective associated with it: going-on (noun) and ongoing (adjective). Look in a good dictionary to find out how they are used and make a sentence with each one in your vocabulary notebook.
Look

Phrasal verbs where look keeps aspects of its basic meaning

The idea of seeing, observing or noticing something is included in many phrasal verbs with look.

Tim: Did you manage to read the report?
Iris: Well, I looked at it, but I haven’t read it properly. [read it quickly and not very carefully]
Tim: I’d like you to read it if you could. We need to look at the conclusions and make some decisions. [examine or consider something carefully in order to make a decision about it]

Rita: How do I get to your village coming from the city?
Bob: When you’re on the motorway, look out for a sign saying ‘Willowsdean’. That’s where you turn off. [carefully watch the things around you so that you will notice a particular thing]
The bank robbers had a lookout standing at the street corner to warn them if the police came. [noun: a person who is watching for danger]

I wasn’t in the demonstration. I was just an onlooker. [noun: someone who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it; from the phrasal verb with the same meaning look on]

Phrasal verbs where look has more abstract meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you …</th>
<th>then you …</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look up to sb</td>
<td>respect and admire them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look down on sb/sth</td>
<td>think that someone or something is less important than you, or that something is not good enough quality for you to use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look after sb/sth</td>
<td>take care of someone or something by doing what is needed to keep someone or something well or in good condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look ahead</td>
<td>think about what will happen in the future and plan for those events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look around/around</td>
<td>try to find something you want (e.g. a job) by asking different people or by looking in different places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to sb/doing sth</td>
<td>feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

9.1 Choose the correct answer.
1 If you are looking around for a new job, you are ...
   a) applying for a new job       b) trying to find a new job
   c) worried about your new job
2 If you look out for someone who is picking you up in their car, you ...
   a) carefully avoid getting hit by their car       b) watch the road and warn them of danger
   c) watch for their car so you will see them when they arrive
3 If you look down on cheap restaurants, you ...
   a) consider them not good enough for you       b) see them from the top windows of your house or flat
   c) always consider them before going to a dearer one
4 If you look after someone’s cat while they are away, you ...
   a) follow the cat everywhere       b) search for it because it is lost
   c) care for it and give it what it needs
5 If you look up to your English teacher, you ...
   a) stand up when you speak to him or her       b) admire and respect him or her
   c) raise your head because he or she is taller than you

9.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable particle.
1 I’m really looking ____________ to seeing my cousins again next week.
2 She’s looking _______________ for a new English course. She’s not very satisfied with the one
   she’s following at the moment.
3 She loves looking _______________ children, so she has decided to train as a nanny.
4 We have to look _______________ to the time when our child will be old enough to go to
   university.
5 Lord Muck is a terrible snob. He looks _______________ on most other people.
6 I didn’t have time to read the newspaper yesterday. I only looked _______________ it very
   quickly.

9.3 Complete the diagram, using words from the opposite page.

9.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs based on look. Read each sentence and try to guess the
meaning of the phrasal verb. Use a dictionary if necessary.
1 You could look up the new words in a dictionary.
2 When I was in Boston on business last week I looked up an old friend.
3 After a long recession the economic situation is looking up.
4 I looked over the report on the way to the meeting.
5 I looked through the report and scribbled down a few notes.
6 Detectives are looking into the murder.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 23
A Make

Make + the particles for, out and up

- **up something** = form the whole of something
- **for somewhere** = go in the direction of
- **out something/someone** = be able to see or hear something or someone with difficulty
- **out someone (or make something out)** = understand why someone behaves as they do
- **out something (or make something out)** = understand something, especially why something has happened

**Examples:**

Can you make out the words of this song?

When we got to the park, the children made for the swings while I sat on a bench.

Sally didn’t want to go to the concert, so she made up an excuse about being ill.

The children loved Uncle Bob because he was so good at making up new games.

Over 30% of the university population is made up of overseas students.

Notice how make out with the following, three meanings is usually used with can or could in a negative sentence and is not usually used in the passive.

I couldn’t make out a word he was saying.

Jack is behaving very strangely at the moment. I just can’t make him out.

I can’t make out why my computer won’t let me save this document.

You probably already know that the noun make-up can mean cosmetics, e.g.

My sister never goes out without any make-up on, but I only wear it for special occasions.

However, make-up, from the verb make up, can also mean the combination of things which form something, e.g.

The class has an interesting make-up, with students from three continents and twelve different countries.

B Make + two particles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make up for sth</td>
<td>provide something good in order to make a bad situation better</td>
<td>The wonderful food in the restaurant made up for the rather uncomfortable seats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make it up to sb</td>
<td>do something good for someone who you have done something bad to in the past, or to someone who has done something good for you</td>
<td>I forgot Teresa’s birthday yesterday so I’ll have to take her somewhere nice to make it up to her.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

10.1 Read these comments by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

Drew: I can't make out what she's saying, can you?
Melanie: I just can't make him out at all, can you?
Lars: I treated her a bit insensitively at the party so I gave her a present to make up for it.
Pete: I made up a story about losing my wallet, so he paid the drinks bill for me.
Jane: I loved the trip. The beautiful scenery made up for the awful roads.

1. Who invented something that was not true?  
2. Who said something good had made a bad experience less bad?  
3. Who has difficulty hearing something?  
4. Who wanted to restore a damaged relationship?  
5. Who can't understand someone's behaviour?

10.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1. As soon as we had checked in at the hotel, we made straight at the beach.
2. She made out some story about the bus being late, but I'm sure she just overslept.
3. Why the camera was not working properly could not be made out by anybody.
4. Harry is very good at making over stories for the children; they love his tales.
5. Can you make what that white thing on the horizon is out?
6. The report is made of three sections up.

The make-up of the new cabinet clearly reflected the extreme wing of the party.

Use a good dictionary or search the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs online at dictionary.cambridge.org to see how many more phrasal verbs with make you can find. Write down three that you particularly want to remember in example sentences.
Put verbs related to physical actions

With all these phrasal verbs the particle can come either before or after the object, e.g. to put on a CD or to put a CD on.

We spent yesterday putting in a new washing machine. [fixing new equipment or a new system in the correct place]

Could you put the air conditioning on, please? It's so hot in here. [make a device work by pressing a switch]

I don't think you've heard this CD. I'll put it on. [put something that sounds or pictures are recorded onto into a machine so that you can hear or see the recording]

Would you mind putting that light out? It's shining directly onto my computer screen. [making a light stop shining by pressing a switch]

I see they're putting up a new block of flats near the park. [building a structure]

It poured with rain while we tried to put our tent up. [open something that is folded or rolled up so that it is ready to use]

Put verbs and time

Dave: Jim, I'm sorry to have to put you off again, but I'm just too busy to see you today [tell someone you can't see them or do something for them till a later time].

Could we put our meeting back till next week? [change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned]

Jim: Sure. We can put it off until next Monday. [decide or arrange to do something at a later time]

Pilot: Ladies and gentlemen, we're now coming in to land at Mexico City. You may want to put your watches forward; the local time is 8.35 a.m. [make a watch or clock show an earlier time]

In Britain, around the last weekend in October, all clocks are put back one hour. [make a watch or clock show an earlier time]

Put verbs and relations with other people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you ...</th>
<th>then ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>are put out</td>
<td>you are annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up with sb/sth</td>
<td>you accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb on to/onto sth/sth</td>
<td>you tell them about something or someone that could help them, often something or someone they did not know about before</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.1 Correct any mistakes in these sentences. If there are no mistakes, write correct at the end of the sentence.
1 I like sleeping in tents but I don't like putting up them.
2 Put that CD on that you bought yesterday. I'd like to hear it.
3 We put last week in a new dishwasher. It's wonderful.
4 Will you put on the TV? I want to watch the tennis.
5 That light is too strong. Shall we put it out?

11.2 Complete the text using particles from the opposite page.

"I don't know how Harry puts in his boss. He works so hard, but his boss even gets him to put the lights on (1) for him when it starts to get dark, and it's always Harry who has to put in (2) new computer equipment. His boss never thinks twice about putting him in (3) when they've arranged a meeting. I know Harry feels put in (4) when he never complains. We should really do what we can to put him in (5) some better jobs."

11.3 Rewrite these sentences so that the actions are the opposite of the ones underlined. Use phrasal verbs from the opposite page and make any other necessary changes so that the sentences make sense.

EXAMPLE  Please turn the radio off now. I'm trying to sleep.
1 Could you watch the light off please. I can't see to read.
2 They're pull the tent down those old buildings near the railway station.
3 The Boy Scouts took their tent down very quickly and loaded it into their bus.
4 Could we possibly bring the meeting forward to 10 o'clock?
5 When we moved into our new house we decided to remove an old, rather ugly fireplace.
6 Can you turn that CD off please. I can't concentrate on my work.

11.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs based on put. Match the phrasal verbs in the sentences 1–5 with the definitions a–c. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 Josie is very good at putting her ideas across.
2 Anyone who is smoking must put their cigarettes out immediately.
3 I'm not putting that on. I'd look ridiculous in it!
4 The secretary's put up some important information about excursions. Have you seen it?
5 The plane was due to put down in Los Angeles at 3:50 a.m., but was diverted to San Francisco at the last minute.

a) stick or fasten a piece of paper to something, e.g. a wall, so that it can be seen
b) express in such a way that others can understand easily
- c) land
d) put a piece of clothing on your body
e) extinguish or stop something burning
Take

Take in a physical sense

If you take apart something or take something apart you separate it into its different parts.

Rod loves taking clocks apart, but he never manages to put them together again.

If you take back something or take something back, you return it to the person or organisation that you bought or borrowed from.

When you go into town to take back your library books you could also take these trousers back to the shop for me – they’re too small.

If you take aside somebody or take somebody aside, you separate someone from a group of people so that you can speak to them privately.

My boss took me aside at the Christmas party and told me he was going to give me a promotion in the New Year.

If you take off, you suddenly leave a place, without telling anyone where you are going.

Most people stayed at the party until quite late, but Rose took off early for some other reason.

Take in an abstract sense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take off sth or</td>
<td>subtract a particular amount from a total</td>
<td>The shop assistant took off ten per cent because the item was damaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off sb (sth)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off sth or</td>
<td>subtract a first number from a second</td>
<td>If you take 11 away from 33, you’re left with 22.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off sb (sth)</td>
<td>number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take back sb or</td>
<td>admit that something you said was</td>
<td>I shouldn’t have called you lazy – I take it back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take back sth</td>
<td>wrong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take back sb (sth)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take in sb or</td>
<td>look at something carefully noticing all</td>
<td>He showed us a photo of his house, but I was too tired that I didn’t really take it in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take in sth in</td>
<td>the details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other senses of take

Lucy has started swimming regularly. She has taken out a year’s membership at a local sports club and has taken to going to the swimming pool every lunch hour. She is so taken up with her swimming that she wouldn’t even take me up on my offer to buy her lunch in the best restaurant in town. The exercise certainly takes it out of her – she is too exhausted to go anywhere in the evenings.

1 subscribed to or registered for something officially
2 started to do something often
3 very busy doing something
4 accept
5 makes her feel very tired

Because the most common verbs, e.g. take, get, make, have so many different phrasal verbs with different meanings associated with them, it is useful to group the meanings, as in the sections of this unit. Try to do this for other common verbs and their phrasal verbs as you meet new ones and try to record an example sentence in your vocabulary notebook to help you remember them.
Exercises

12.1 Each line of this text contains a phrasal verb with take, but some of them are used incorrectly. If a line has a correct phrasal verb, tick the box. If the line is incorrect, cross out the incorrect word and write the correct word in the box.

**EXAMPLE** The watch was broken so I took it off to the shop.

I bought a new jacket but it had a mark on it so I took it back.

The shop assistant took me off side and told me that

if I was prepared to keep the jacket she would take away
ten per cent. I didn’t really take in what she was saying at

first, but once I understood, I decided to take her over on the offer.

12.2 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.

1 Roy: I find it very offensive that you called Caran an idiot.
Kim: OK, OK. Sorry, I shouldn’t have said it. I ............................

2 Matt: Fiona seems really keen on her tennis these days.
Clare: Yes, she’s really ............................ it. She’s so ............................ with it

that she’s stopped going to the swimming pool.

3 Jim: I tried to clean the inside of my computer and I’ve put all the bits back but I

have two bits left over.
Len: Well, I’m not surprised! I warned you not to ............................ in the first place.

4 Brian: I get so bored since I retired from my job.
Miriam: Well, why don’t you ............................ golf?

5 Ali: What’s this figure here, £30?
Paul: It’s what you get when you ............................ £15

from £45.

6 Anoma: You look exhausted these days.
Terry: Yes, teaching 28 hours a week really ............................ me.

7 Hilary: Geoff left very suddenly, didn’t he?
Kersty: Yes, he just ............................ without even saying goodbye.

To the surprise of everyone at the party, Geoff suddenly took off without saying goodbye.
Up

Read this text about someone complaining about having to do housework. Notice how the particle up sometimes expresses the idea of completing or totally finishing something.

I spent all morning yesterday cleaning up my study. There were books and papers everywhere. Then I had to sweep up the rubbish and dead leaves on the terrace. After that I tried to tidy up my bedroom. There were dirty clothes all jumbled up in a pile on the floor. I had to hang up four jackets and several pairs of trousers I’d left lying on chairs. That took me an hour. Then I discovered the washbasin was clogged up in the bathroom, so I had to clear that. By that time I’d used up all my energy and I was too tired to do anything, so I just fell asleep on the sofa.

1 making a place tidy and clean, especially by putting things where they usually belong
2 remove rubbish or dirt, usually from the floor, using a brush
3 make a room or a group of things tidy by putting things in the correct place
4 (adjective) mixed together in an untidy way (from the verb jumble up)
5 hang something, especially clothes, on a hook
6 blocked
7 finished a supply of something

Note how the particle up can be used for emphasis:
Eat up your vegetables, children! Drink up your juice! Paul’s used up all the milk.
These three sentences could be written without up, but using up emphasises the meaning of ‘finish it all or completely’.

Read this live Internet chat between Robert and Gemma.

| G: | Hi Rob, are you there? |
| R: | Hi Gemma, what’s new? |
| G: | My sister Val showed up at last. She’s been promising to come for weeks. |
| R: | Great :) |
| G: | Yeah, she turned up yesterday evening. |
| R: | What’s she doing these days? |
| G: | She’s just opened up a restaurant serving exotic food from different countries. It’s in that shopping mall in Dunston, you know. |
| R: | Wow! That’s original. It’ll certainly earn Dunston up a lot. It’s such a boring place. How did she think of that? |
| G: | Oh, she’s always full of new ideas. |
| R: | So, what’s the set up? Is she the only person involved? |
| G: | No, she has a business partner and they divide up the work — and the profits! |
| R: | Sounds like fun :) |
| G: | Yeah, but she says it’s hard work. She spends half the day chopping up food and cleaning the kitchen. |
| R: | Men. Maybe we’re better off working in office jobs ...

1 arrived, especially at a place where people were expecting her
2 arrived
3 started a new shop or business
4 make something more interesting and exciting
5 (noun) the way that something is arranged (from the verb set up)
6 separate something into smaller parts or groups
7 cutting something, especially food, into small pieces
Exercises

13.1 Look at the picture and answer the questions.
1. What does the woman need to tidy up?
2. What does she need to sweep up?
3. What must she hang up?
4. What are jumbled up on the floor?
5. How might she feel when she has cleared everything up?

13.2 Choose the best verb from B to fill the gaps in this e-mail. Use a different verb in each gap and write it in the correct form.

Hi, Gina!
How are things with you? Hope all’s well. Has your cousin __________ (1) up yet? We certainly need him around to __________ (2) this place up a bit! Besides which, I need his help in the garden. An old tree blew down last week and I need to __________ (3) up the branches. When he eventually __________ (4) up, let’s try out that new club that’s __________ (5) up in Market Street.

Love, Tanya

13.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

1. Sam __________ up too much time on the first exam question and didn’t finish the paper.
   a) clogged    b) used    c) divided    d) showed
2. Guess who __________ up at midnight last night?
   a) showed    b) livened    c) hung    d) turned
3. Please could you __________ up those onions for me?
   a) divide    b) turn    c) chop    d) clog
4. Jill spent ages __________ up the lounge.
   a) clearing    b) tidying    c) hanging    d) turning
5. A new supermarket is __________ up near us next month.
   a) turning    b) showing    c) opening    d) hanging
6. The bath is __________ up with hair. It’s disgusting!
   a) jumbled    b) swept    c) chopped    d) clogged
7. Could you __________ up the leaves on the front steps, please?
   a) hang    b) clear    c) use    d) sweep
8. When the old man died, his things were __________ up among his children.
   a) chopped    b) avoided    c) cleared    d) used

13.4 In some of the phrasal verbs in A and B, opposite the verb can be used on its own without the particle up to make a grammatical sentence with more or less the same meaning.

1. In which cases could the up be left out?
2. In the sentences where the particle is not essential, what extra meanings, if any, do you think the up adds?
Out

### Out meaning not in

Many phrasal verbs with out have an association with the basic meaning of out, i.e. not in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave out sth or leave sth out</td>
<td>not include something or someone</td>
<td>For homework do exercise 8 but leave out number 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut out sth or cut sth out</td>
<td>remove by cutting, usually from paper or cloth</td>
<td>She cut some interesting articles out of the newspaper for us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show sb sth or show sb out</td>
<td>lead a visitor who is leaving to the door of a room or building</td>
<td>Let me show you out – it’s quite hard to find the exit from here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see out sb or see sb out</td>
<td>go with someone to the door of a room or building when they are leaving</td>
<td>Don’t worry, I can see myself out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let out sth/sth or let sb/sth out</td>
<td>allow a person or animal to leave, usually by opening a locked or closed door</td>
<td>The door will be locked but the receptionist will let you out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lock out sb or lock sb out</td>
<td>prevent someone from entering a building by locking the door</td>
<td>I forgot my keys and was locked out of my own house!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lock yourself out</td>
<td>accidentally prevent yourself from getting into a building by leaving the keys inside when you shut the door</td>
<td>I’ve locked myself out so often that I’ve hidden a spare key in the garden now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Out meaning to the end or completely

Sometimes out in phrasal verbs gives an idea of completing or doing something to the end.

I cleared out my room on Sunday, [arranged things that were untidy]

I cleared out [made tidy by removing unwanted things] all my wardrobes and threw away all my worn out shoes [adjective; used so much that they had become damaged, from the verb wear out].

Unfortunately, I’d run out of furniture polish, so I couldn’t do any polishing, but I’ll do that next weekend. [there was none left because it had all been used]

### Other uses of out

Here are some other phrasal verbs which use out.

He spread out the photos on the table so everyone could see them. [arranged on a flat surface]

The band has a new album coming out next month. [available for people to buy]

Madam, would you like to try out the bike before deciding whether to buy it? [test to find out if it works or decide whether you like it]

My husband’s business is so busy at the moment that I’m helping out in the office. [helping, especially by doing work or giving money]

I always feel I lost out because I never learnt a musical instrument as a child. [did not have an advantage that others had]
Exercises

14.1 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from A.
1 I'll take you down to the exit, if you like.
2 For some reason my name was omitted from the guest list.
3 My keys are inside the car and I can't get into it.
4 He can find his own way to the exit – there's no need to take him there.
5 She collected pictures of her pop idol from the music magazines.
6 The security guard opened the gate so we could leave the building site.

14.2 Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs. Write the verbs in the correct form.
1 I ................................ out by not learning a foreign language at school. I meet so many people I just can't communicate with.
2 Would you like to ................................ out my tennis racket? It's a new model.
3 Our business at the shop is growing so fast we need someone to ................................ out at weekends.
4 I got ................................ out yesterday. I left home without my keys and my flatmate had gone away for the day.
5 I ................................ out a job advertisement from the paper last night and now I don't know where I put it.
6 Rana: Right, Miles, I'm leaving now.
   Miles: I'll come with you and .............................. you out. Our new office building is a bit complicated.
   Rana: Oh, it's OK, I can .............................. myself out.
   Miles: Well, actually you can't. They lock the street door at 6 p.m. so I'll have to come and ................................ you out.

14.3 Write a sentence about each picture using phrasal verbs from this unit.

14.4 Choose which sentence from a–e below best fits the gaps 1–5 in the text.

I wanted to find out more about the history of my town for a college project. (1) So I decided to go to the local library. I got out some books, newspapers and some old maps which they had. (2) I decided to make a pile of things to photocopy. (3) There was a huge amount of material, too much in fact. (4) So I hurried and just chose the most important things to copy in the time I had left. (5) I will go back and do them some other time.

a) So I sorted out the most important items.
b) Unfortunately, I had to leave out the very big maps.
c) I'd cut out some articles from the local paper but I needed more information.
d) Time was running out; the library closed at 4 p.m.
e) I spread them all out on a big table.
A

Leaving places

Off sometimes combines with verbs to express the idea of something or someone leaving a place.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The space shuttle will lift off at 09.00 hours.</td>
<td>leave the ground (of a spacecraft or aircraft)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We should head off at about six tomorrow.</td>
<td>start a journey or leave a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve sent off that letter you wrote to the newspaper.</td>
<td>sent a letter, document, or parcel by post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s try and slip off before the meeting finishes and go for a drink.</td>
<td>leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why did he just clear off without saying goodbye? Clear off! This is private property.</td>
<td>leave a place quickly (informal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

Ending or changing state

Off sometimes expresses the idea of moving towards an ending or a change of state.

I’ll come and see you off at the airport tomorrow. [go to the airport in order to say goodbye]
My cousin has sold off his share of the Internet company he started with a friend. [sold all or part of a business]
After lunch Grandpa dozed off on the sofa. [gradually started to sleep, especially during the day]
Mr Prosser suddenly looked very pale and broke off in the middle of his lecture. [suddenly stopped speaking]
She’s so clever. She can run off a 1,000-word essay in an hour. It takes me all day! [quickly and easily write something that is usually difficult to write]
Note that run off with the meaning of leave somewhere quickly could also have been included in A above.

C

Other expressions with off

What he said has put me off the idea of going to Blandville for a holiday altogether! [made me not like something]
His description of the hotel was very off-putting. [adjective: made something sound unattractive or unpleasant, from the verb put off]
Maybe we should hold off and go to Paris or somewhere in the spring? [delay doing something]
I think I’ve managed to turn him off the idea of building a model railway track in the back garden. [make someone decide that they are not interested in something]
She didn’t get offended by the comment; she just laughed it off. [laughed about something unpleasant in order to make it seem less important or serious]
Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences, using verbs from A or B. Write the verbs in the correct form.
1. The company is not doing very well - isn’t it time you ........................ off your shares in it?
2. We were talking to Janice when she suddenly ........................... off in the middle of a sentence and ran out of the room.
3. I thought it was very rude of him just to ........................... off like that without saying goodbye.
4. Would you like me to come and ........................... you off at the station?
5. I thought I’d ........................... off fairly soon - I’ve got to get up early tomorrow, but thank you for a lovely party.
6. I was so tried that I just ........................... off in front of the television.
7. You mustn’t forget to ........................... off that birthday card this afternoon.
8. A large crowd gathered to watch the rocket ........................... off.

15.2 Replace the underlined words in these sentences with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
1. It won’t take her long to do the letters you asked her to do.
2. I often fall asleep in boring lectures.
3. Let’s try and leave quietly before the others wake up.
4. In the middle of a long speech the actor suddenly stopped and ran off the stage.
5. I’ve got all the students’ exam results in the post.
6. The school disco has given her quite negative feelings about discos in general.
7. Tell that boy in our front garden to leave at once - he’s annoying the dog.
8. Fortunately, he didn’t take the criticism of his acting seriously.

15.3 Answer these questions using full sentences.
1. If someone criticized your hairstyle would you laugh it off or get very upset?
2. What kind of programmes are most likely to make you doze off in front of the television?
3. If you go on a journey on your own, who usually sees you off?
4. Can you run off an English essay quickly or does it take you a long time to do?
5. Why might a lecturer break off in the middle of a talk?
6. If you plan to slip off during a party, how are you intending to go?
7. If someone tells some children to ‘clear off’, how do you think that person probably feels about the children?
8. Name something that might put you off eating your dinner.

15.4 Rewrite these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page that means the opposite of the underlined verb. Make any other necessary changes so that the sentences make sense.
1. I’m going to meet James at the airport tomorrow.
2. I’ve just received a letter from Pauline.
3. The rocket is due to land tomorrow at noon.
4. I hope I’ve managed to interest him in the idea of redecorating the house.
5. I woke up when all the others went off to play tennis.
6. We’re planning to arrive in the early evening.
On

On in phrasal verbs sometimes has a clear link with the basic physical meaning of on.

Never buy shoes without trying them on! [putting on a piece of clothing to see whether it fits and whether you like it]

Ray: Do you think Dan’s really feeling better or is he just putting on a brave face? [pretending to have a particular feeling or behave in a way that is not real or natural for you]

Joe: No, I think he’s fine now. I don’t think his cheerfulness is put-on. [adjective: pretend or not genuine, from the verb put on]

Sam: I’ve got something weighing on* my mind at the moment. Could you give me some advice? [worrying, upsetting]

Deb: No problem. Tell me all about it and I’ll do what I can.

On is also used with verbs where there is an idea of dependence.

You can always rely/depend/count on* Jim! [be confident that someone will help you]

*In these four verbs upon may be used instead of on. Upon sounds slightly more formal.

On in phrasal verbs also often contains an idea of further.

Just because you’ve failed one driving test, you mustn’t stop having lessons. You must keep on trying. [continue to do something]

When you’ve finished with the magazine, just pass it on to someone else. [give]

B

Here are some of the many phrasal verbs that use in. In each case there is a link with the basic physical meaning of in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>call in</td>
<td>visit a place or person for a short time, usually when you are going somewhere else</td>
<td>Please call in and see us when you are next in town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth in or take in sth</td>
<td>make a piece of clothing narrower</td>
<td>This skirt is too big for me now—I’ll have to take it in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub sth in or rub in sth</td>
<td>put a substance on the surface of something and rub it so that it goes into the surface</td>
<td>Rub the cream in gently with the tips of your fingers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lock sb in or lock in sb</td>
<td>prevent someone from leaving a room or building by locking the doors</td>
<td>Make sure you leave the office by 6.30 p.m. or you’ll be locked in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push in (informal)</td>
<td>rudely join a line of people who are waiting by going in front of some of the people who are already there</td>
<td>It’s so annoying when people push in at the bus stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink in</td>
<td>start to be believed (used about something unpleasant or surprising, which usually has implications)</td>
<td>Be patient with Jenny—it’ll take a long time for the terrible news to sink in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Exercises

16.1 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using phrasal verbs from A.
1 I read the gardening article you gave me then gave it to a friend who's also interested in plants.
2 Do you think she's really angry, or do you think she's just pretending?
3 He looks very pale and tired. Something is clearly worrying him.
4 It's a lovely jacket. See if it fits you and how it looks on you.
5 I'm not going to stop working until I've finished this report.
6 You can be sure that Brian will be there when you need him.

16.2 Look at these remarks by different people and then read the statements 1–5 below. If the statement is true, tick (✓) the box. If the statement is false, put a cross (x) in the box and explain why it is false.

Richard
I was working late and didn't realise it was 8 p.m. The main door out of the office had been closed for the night and I had no key.

Bob
I've always been able to ask my parents to help me when I have had financial problems.

Louise
I've got some mosquito bites. Have you got any cream that'll stop them itching?

Anwar
Oscar seems to be not answering his phone. I'll tell him the news when I see him tomorrow.

Alice
My new skirt was far too loose so I reduced the waistband by three centimetres.

Jan
I've got a lot of problems which are worrying me at the moment.

1 Anwar has decided to keep on phoning Oscar. [x]
2 Alice decided not to take her skirt in. [x]
3 Jan has a number of things weighing on her mind. [x]
4 Louise wants to rub in some cream. [x]
5 Bob can't really count on his parents' support. [x]
6 Richard got locked in. [x]

16.3 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.
1 Hey, that man just pushed on – that taxi should have been ours!
2 Mary's bad news has been weighing my mind on all day.
3 I need time for to sink in the news.
4 I couldn't leave the room because someone had locked me out.
5 Phrasal verbs may seem hard but you must keep upon trying.
6 You'll never guess who called at the office in today!

Follow Up
Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionary website at dictionary.cambridge.org. Find one more meaning for each of these verbs and write an example sentence: pass on, take in and nab in. If you do not have Internet access, try looking in a good monolingual or bilingual dictionary.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 37
## Down and over

### Different meanings of down

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>general meaning of down</th>
<th>example</th>
<th>meaning of phrasal verb in example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move in the direction of the ground</td>
<td>We'll have to chop/ cut down that old tree. It's dead.</td>
<td>cut through it so that it falls to the ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heaviness which causes difficulty</td>
<td>We were weighed down with luggage, so we couldn't run to catch the train.</td>
<td>carrying too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was loaded down with library books, so I took the bus home.</td>
<td>carrying too many things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on paper</td>
<td>Just take down the main points, not everything the lecturer says. I'll write down your phone number, or else I'll forget it.</td>
<td>write something, especially something that someone says</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>write something on a piece of paper so that you do not forget it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reduce a number or amount, or not let it rise</td>
<td>I'm taking these tablets to keep my blood pressure down. I'm trying to cut down on burgers and chips as I've started to put on weight.</td>
<td>stop the number, level, or size of something from increasing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eat or drink less of a particular thing, usually in order to improve your health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop an activity</td>
<td>The car factory has shut down, and 2,000 people have lost their jobs. That nice Italian restaurant in town has closed down. What a pity!</td>
<td>closed and stopped working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>stopped doing business</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Over

Read Ali's e-mail to Karen about a report at work.

```
From: Ali Married
To: Karen Philips
Subject: Philip's report

Could you please read over1 Philip's latest report and just look over2 the figures in the appendix? We can go over3 it together when we meet tomorrow. Then I'll add our comments and hand the whole thing over4 to the sales team.

Ali
```

Listen to this answer phone message.

```
Hi, Mum. I'm staying over1 at Sheila's tonight - she's a bit miserable because she didn't win the tennis championship. I'm sure she'll get over2 it soon, though. She also fell over3 and hurt her knee quite badly. Anyway, I'll see you tomorrow. Bye.
```

---

1. read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better
2. quickly examine something
3. talk or think about something in order to explain it or make sure that it is correct
4. give something to someone else

1. spending the night somewhere else rather than going home (staying on its own would also be possible here)
2. recover from an illness or disappointment
3. fell to the ground (fell on its own would also be possible here)
Exercises

17.1 Read the sentences using phrasal verbs from A and answer the questions.
1 Jamie is weighed down with luggage.
   What do we know about Jamie's luggage?
2 She's trying to cut down on chocolate.
   Does she still eat chocolate?
3 Sid took down everything we said.
   Did Sid tape or write what was said?
4 The garage has shut down.
   Has the garage shut for the evening?
5 They chopped down the bushes in front of their house.
   Why might they have decided to do this?

17.2 Complete these newspaper headlines with the correct verbs from the box. Write the verbs in the correct form.

- chop  - cut  - go  - hand  - keep  - shut

1 LOCAL CAFÉ ____________ DOWN BY HEALTH INSPECTORS
2 DOCTORS WARN TEENAGERS TO ____________ DOWN ON CIGARETTES
3 REBEL TROOPS ____________ OVER WEAPONS
4 TWENTY OAKS ____________ DOWN TO MAKE WAY FOR BYPASS
5 GOVERNMENT PROMISES TO ____________ DOWN INFLATION
6 CABINET OF MINISTERS TO ____________ OVER REPORT IN DETAIL TOMORROW

17.3 Answer these questions about phrasal verbs with *down* and *over*. Use a dictionary if necessary.
1 Which three phrasal verbs in the e-mail on the opposite page are often used with *through* instead of *over*? Does using *through* instead of *over* change the meaning at all?
2 Can you see any meaning for *over* that connects the three verbs in the answerphone message?
3 Match each of the phrasal verbs below with the correct general meaning of *down* from the table in A.
   a) I need a holiday. Stress and overwork are *wearing me down*.
   b) Let me *note down* your e-mail address on this slip of paper.
   c) A lot of fences *blew down* in the hurricane last night.
   d) The police are trying to *crack down* on street crime.
   e) The government is doing all it can to *hold prices down*.
4 Explain what these phrasal verbs with *over* mean in the sentences below.
   a) Sally is very good at *putting her ideas over* in meetings.
   b) I haven't got enough room. Can you *move over*, please?
   c) Can you *check over* these figures for me, please? It's important that there are no mistakes.
   d) Don't put your glass of wine on the floor. Someone is sure to *knock it over*.
   e) Make sure the milk does not *boil over*.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 39
Around and about

Around and about are often interchangeable in phrasal verbs: both particles are equally possible with all the verbs in A below and with some of the verbs in B. Note also that round can sometimes replace around.

Phrasal verbs with around and about often express the idea of acting in a relaxed way, or without a particular purpose or without concentrating.

Most of the verbs in this unit are informal.

### Spending time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wait about/around</td>
<td>stay in one place without doing anything as you wait for something to happen</td>
<td>If you can wait around for about an hour, we should be able to tell you your results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laze about/around</td>
<td>relax and enjoy yourself by doing very little</td>
<td>For the first week of our holiday we usually just laze about on the beach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit about/around</td>
<td>spend time sitting down and doing very little</td>
<td>Please let me help you. I don’t like just sitting about all day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang about/round</td>
<td>spend time somewhere without doing very much</td>
<td>There are always a lot of rather suspicious-looking men hanging round outside that bar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(somewhere)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(informal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mess about/around</td>
<td>spend time playing or doing things with no particular purpose</td>
<td>Tim spends his weekends messing around in the garage repairing things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>behave stupidly, waste time doing unimportant things</td>
<td>The pupils were given extra homework for messing around in class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mess sb about/</td>
<td>treat someone badly or waste their time, e.g. by changing your mind or not doing what you promised</td>
<td>He’s been messing her around for ages and just won’t commit to the relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around (informal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie about/around</td>
<td>spend time lying down doing very little</td>
<td>I hate the way he just lies around all day watching TV while I’m working.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Being in a place

Fans were milling about/around/round the hotel lobby hoping to see the film star and get her autograph. [walking around a particular place or area, usually while waiting for something] Meanwhile, photographers and journalists were standing about/around/round chatting to each other. [spending time standing in a place waiting for someone or doing very little]

Mick: Can you stick around this afternoon? [informal: stay somewhere for a period of time] If so, I’ll take you around/round the office and introduce you to the other secretaries if you like. [visit a place with someone showing them the most interesting or important parts]

Anne: No, it’s all right, thanks. The boss has already shown me around/round. [gone with someone to a place that they have not visited before and shown them the interesting parts]
Exercises

18.1 Draw lines to match the verbs in the left-hand column with the best definitions in the right-hand column.

1 mess
2 hang
3 lie
4 sit
5 laze

about(a)round

lies down doing very little
spend time sitting down and doing very little
relax, enjoy yourself and do very little
behave stupidly or waste time
spend time somewhere not doing very much

18.2 Now use the verbs from exercise 18.1 to fill the gaps in these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form and use each verb only once.

1 She just ________________ around on the sofa all day reading magazines.
   I wish she'd get a job.

2 We could be ________________ round here for hours waiting for a taxi. Let's walk.

3 After the meeting we were just ________________ around chatting for a while.

4 My idea of a perfect weekend is just ________________ around at home with a good
   book.

5 I wish the kids would stop ________________ about.

18.3 Rewrite the underlined words in these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 Do you want to stay here after the meeting? I finish work at 5 p.m. and I could go with
   you and show you the most interesting places in the old town.

2 Nothing much happened at the demonstration. We just stood in one place not doing much
   and held our banners up.

3 They spend most weekends just doing things without much purpose in their boat; they
   don't really sail it seriously.

4 On my first day, the boss went with me through the workshop and introduced me to
   various people I'd be working with.

5 At the drinks party people were just wandering here and there hoping to find someone
   they knew.

6 Look, I'm sorry, I don't want to cause you problems and waste your time, but I wonder if
   we could postpone our meeting till next week?

18.4 Here are some other phrasal verbs with about/around. Read the sentences and try to explain
   in your own words what they mean. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 I've got to go now but I'll see you around.

2 Don't order me about! I'm not your servant, you know.

3 Shop assistant: Can I help you?
   Customer: No thanks. I'm just looking around.

4 My suitcase got a bit bashed about on the plane.

5 He told the kids to stop fooling around.
For and with

Note that with all the verbs in this unit the particles for and with must go before the object of the verb.

A  For

Each response in the dialogues below contains two phrasal verbs with for. Learning verbs in pairs associated with the same context can help you remember them.

Nina: I’ve been given the chance to apply for that new post in Head Office. What do you think?
Gary: I think you should go for it [try to get or achieve it]. We’ll all be rooting for you [informal: showing support for you in a competition, or hoping that you will succeed].
Melanie: How’s your new babysitter?
Bretz: We couldn’t ask for a better babysitter [the new babysitter is the best of her kind]. She just lives for our kids and they just adore her [believes that the kids are the most important people in her life].
Val: I saw you going into Betty’s flat with her this morning. Is anything wrong?
Irene: Her washing machine had flooded the kitchen. She sent for a plumber and got it fixed but it left a terrible mess [send someone a message asking them to come to see you]. We had planned to go into town and I was calling for her on the way there, but in the end we stayed at home and tidied the mess in the kitchen [visiting her place in order to collect her].
Joe: What does ‘R’ mean on that sign?
Ray: I think it stands for ‘restaurant’ [is the first letter of a word or name and is used to represent it]. Let’s stop. You must be dying for something to eat [informal: be wanting something very much, especially food or drink].

B  With

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>could do with sb</td>
<td>need or want something or someone (informal)</td>
<td>I could do with a cup of tea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with sb</td>
<td>if something [e.g. book, film, article] deals with a particular subject or idea; it is about that subject or idea</td>
<td>His latest book deals with the civil war of 1944–1989.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick with it</td>
<td>continue doing something even though it is difficult (informal)</td>
<td>I know studying for a PhD is hard, but I think you should stick with it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go with sb</td>
<td>if one thing goes with another, they go well together</td>
<td>That shirt goes really well with your blue jacket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up with sb</td>
<td>accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it</td>
<td>I don’t know how she puts up with his bad temper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch up with sb</td>
<td>meet someone you know, after not seeing them for a period of time</td>
<td>I hope to catch up with Freda when I’m in Berlin. I haven’t seen her for years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.1 Look at the phrasal verbs in A. Then match the questions 1-6 with the appropriate answers a-f below.

1. Do you think I should buy these shoes – they’re a bit expensive?
2. Oh dear, look at that accident.
3. What did you think of the restaurant?
4. Do you know what CV means?
5. Would you like to go to a café?
6. Who are you supporting in the league?
   a) Couldn’t have asked for anything better!
   b) Yes, go for it!
   c) Quick! Send for an ambulance!
   d) Yes, I’m dying for an ice cream.
   e) We’re rooting for the Reds, as usual.
   f) Sure! It stands for curriculum vitae.

19.2 Complete these sentences with an appropriate verb. Write the verb in the correct form.

1. He ______________________ for a doctor as soon as he felt the pains in his chest.
2. Martha ______________________ for her work so she’s going to find it very hard when she has to retire.
3. These boots don’t really ______________________ with this skirt, but they’re comfortable.
4. You ______________________ for a nicer teacher. She’s so patient and kind.
5. I’ll have to have a word with Gina. I can’t ______________________ up with her rudeness any longer!
6. Your hair is too long – you ______________________ with a haircut.
7. You should ______________________ with the course. It would be a shame to give up now.
8. I love going back to my home town and ______________________ up with all my old friends.

19.3 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues.

1. Anne: This fish tastes delicious with your tomato sauce.
   Jenny: Yes, they do ______________________ well. Each other, don’t they?
2. Bob: Shall we go to the concert together?
   Tina: Good idea. I’ll ______________________ you on the way there.
3. Tess: I’ll go and put the kettle on.
   Tony: Great, I’m ______________________ a cup of tea.
4. Joan: I thought the film was great.
   Ivan: Yes, I thought it ______________________ the theme of love really sensitively.
5. Mark: Let’s meet for a coffee and a chat next week.
   Karen: Yes, I can’t wait to ______________________ you.

19.4 Rewrite these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. I couldn’t tolerate such noisy neighbours as yours.
2. It’s been such a busy week. I can’t wait for the weekend.
3. Jean’s shoes match her handbag perfectly.
4. All the students at his university were hoping Kyle would win the golf championship.
5. I have the best job you could imagine.
6. Her grandson is the most important person in Stella’s life.
Through and back

Through

Through in phrasal verbs gives an idea of going from one side of something to the other, or from the beginning to the end of something. Note that with most of these phrasal verbs through must go before the object of the verb.

If you sleep through a loud noise or activity, it does not wake you.
I'm sorry I'm late. I'm afraid I slept through my alarm.

If you live through something, you experience a difficult situation or event.
People who have lived through a war often have rather a different outlook on life.

If you flick/flip through a magazine or book, you look briefly at its pages.
I usually flick/flip through a magazine before buying it.

If you look through something, you read it quickly and not very carefully.
If you go through something, you carefully read or discuss it to make sure that it is correct.
I'll look through the report tonight and then we can go through it properly tomorrow.

If you take someone through something, you explain it or show them how to do it.
Don't worry - Jack will take you through the job before we leave you on your own.

If you see through a person who is trying to trick you, you realise what they are really like or what they are trying to do.
He is so charming that few people see through him and realise that he is just a conman.

Back

Back in phrasal verbs usually conveys the idea of returning.

If you want to return something you have bought by post, perhaps because it is the wrong size or is damaged, you send it back. If you go to the shop to exchange it in person you take it back. Shops usually have to agree to take back things they have sold you if you find they are not in good condition when you get home. If you call/phone/ring someone back or e-mail someone back, you are replying to a phone message or e-mail from them.

Note that with the verbs above, back can go before or after the object of the verb.

If someone, especially a child, answers (someone) back, they reply rudely to someone they should be polite to.

Mother: Say thank you to Mrs Brown.
Child: Say thank you yourself.
Mother: Don't answer me back like that.

An interesting use of back is in the expression: We go back ten years.
This is an informal way of saying: We have known each other for ten years.

If you bite back, you do something bad to someone because they did something bad to you.
However, if you bite something back or bite back something, you stop yourself from saying something that shows your true feelings or thoughts.

When Emma is criticised she doesn't hesitate to bite back.
When Karl asked me what I thought of his lime-green suit, I had to bite back my initial response.
Exercises

20.1 Write what you could say in these situations using phrasal verbs with through.
1 Your boss asks you to explain to a new member of staff how things are done in the office, step by step. What could you say to the new person?
2 A friend warns you that another person, Leo, is trying to trick you. Reassure the friend that you realised what Leo was really like the first moment you met him.
3 You arrive late for an important meeting. You set your alarm clock but didn’t wake up when it rang. Apologise and explain what happened.
4 You have done some calculations at work, and there seems to be a mistake. Ask a colleague to read the figures carefully to see if they can see any mistakes.
5 A colleague offers to read in detail a 12-page report you have written. Tell them that that will not be necessary and that you’d be grateful if they just looked at it very briefly. (Give three possible answers.)
6 A friend asks you why a person you know always seems so sad. Explain that that person has experienced some terrible things over the last few years.

20.2 Complete these sentences using verbs from B.
1 This new jacket just doesn’t look right on me; the colour is all wrong. If I ____________ it back to the shop, do you think they’d ____________ it back? I bought it over a week ago.
2 I had to ____________ back some angry words when they told me I had lost my job.
3 I bought this clock on the Internet, but it’s not as nice as it looked on the computer screen. I think I’ll ____________ it back.
4 I don’t think she’ll just accept his insults. She’s the sort of person who will ____________ back if she’s attacked.
5 We’re old friends. We ____________ back to the 1980s when we were at college together.
6 Children nowadays seem to lack respect for their parents and won’t hesitate to ____________ back.

20.3 Complete the sentences using an appropriate phrasal verb from the opposite page.
1 Joe rang while you were out. Please could you ____________
2 I don’t like these trousers I bought today. I think I ____________
3 Harry missed his train this morning because he ____________
4 Ellen isn’t really reading the magazine; she’s just ____________
5 I wanted to tell her how upset I was but I managed to ____________

Mr Trotsky was one of those people everyone could see through immediately.
### Into

Read the entries in Diana’s personal diary. Each entry has a phrasal verb with *into*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Entry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7 Mon</td>
<td>Ran into Mary W in town today. Nice to see her again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Tue</td>
<td>Car problems again today! Must look into getting a new one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Wed</td>
<td>Poor old Eckhard! The dogs told him he didn’t like some work myself done and she burst into tears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Thu</td>
<td>The book wants to have lunch with me. Annie says I shouldn’t read anything into it, but she expects of his motives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Fri</td>
<td>Met Liam today. He went into his marriage problems in great detail. Felt sorry for him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Sat</td>
<td>Decided to throw myself into doing some gardening now that spring is here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Sun</td>
<td>Saw Liam again. Told him I was busy as I didn’t want to enter into another discussion about his private life.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Away

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tidy away sth or</td>
<td>put things in cupboards and drawers, etc. after you have been using them</td>
<td>Mum told me to tidy away all my things before my aunt came to visit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidy sth away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pack away sth or</td>
<td>put something into a bag or container, or put something in the place where it is usually kept</td>
<td>The scouts packed away their tents and left the camping ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pack sth away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb away (usually + from)</td>
<td>force someone to stop doing something they enjoy in order to do something else</td>
<td>I’m sorry to tear you away from your computer, but I need your help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay away from sth</td>
<td>avoid something that has a bad effect on you</td>
<td>I think I should stay away from desserts. I’m putting on weight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay away from sb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send away for sth</td>
<td>write to an organisation to ask them to send you something</td>
<td>I’ve sent away for a brochure about holidays in New Zealand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lock yourself away</td>
<td>go to a room or building where you can be alone, usually so that you can work</td>
<td>I decided to lock myself away in my room till I’d finished my essay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run away (often + from)</td>
<td>secretly leave a place because you are unhappy there</td>
<td>Did you ever run away from home as a child?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
21.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1. At the supermarket yesterday, Julia ran into his words.
2. Kim is getting over his broken heart by throwing himself into Martin.
3. When she saw me dressed up as a pirate, she burst into the causes of the war.
4. He doesn’t think before he speaks so don’t read too much into the argument.
5. In your essay you should have gone more hully into what happened.
6. We were disagreeing about the film and then Jo entered into laughter.
7. The police are doing all they can to look into his studies.

21.2 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb with away. Write the verb in the correct form and add, if necessary, a reflexive pronoun (e.g. myself, yourself).

1. Once terrified my parents by ________________________________ from home.
2. Please ________________________________ your games and books. It’s time for dinner.
3. You really should ________________________________ Stanley. He’s a bad influence on you.
4. She was so upset that she ________________________________ in her room until the next morning.
5. Adam has ________________________________ an application form for that job he saw.
6. Please could you ________________________________ from the TV; I need some help in the garden.

21.3 Complete these sentences in any way that makes sense using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. I was very surprised when Helen burst ________________________________
2. It makes sense to stay ________________________________
3. My best friend always throws ________________________________
4. Sometimes I’d really like to run ________________________________
5. I find this job so stressful; I really should look ________________________________
6. When I went to the town centre last week I ran ________________________________
7. Before moving house I spent weeks packing ________________________________
8. Whenever visitors are coming, I usually tidy ________________________________

21.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs with into and away. Read the sentences 1–5 and match the phrasal verbs with the definitions a–e below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1. As soon as Joe saw me he launched into a long account of his travels.
2. Because it is so expensive in this country at the moment, tourists are keeping away.
3. Trying to cross the room in the dark, he banged into a small table and knocked it over.
4. It isn’t a person in that field, it’s a scarecrow — the farmer wants to scare the birds away.
5. I bumped into your sister in town this morning.

a) knock against something, usually by accident
b) meet someone you know when you have not planned to meet them
c) start doing or saying something (e.g. a speech or a story) in a very enthusiastic way
d) make a person or animal so frightened that they go away
e) not go to a place

21.5 Can you see any basic meanings for into and away in the phrasal verbs in this unit that might help you learn them?
Time: spending time

**A At work**

Florence works as a nurse. When she starts work, she has to **clock on**\(^1\) and when she leaves she **clocks off**\(^2\). If the machine shows that she has worked an extra long shift, then she is able to **take time off**\(^3\) at a later date. She was planning to take a holiday in July this year but has had to **bring it forward**\(^4\) as July is going to be a particularly busy time for her hospital this year.

Florence loves her work but her hospital is understaffed and she hates to **always be pressed for**\(^5\) time. She finds it almost impossible to **fit in**\(^6\) time to talk to the patients although she feels that this is an important part of her job. She can chat for a few minutes but then she has to **press on**\(^7\) with her other duties. The hospital employs many nurses from overseas, but when their **work permits run out**\(^8\) after two years they have to leave.

1. record the time she arrives at work, usually at a machine with a clock (also clock in)
2. record the time she leaves work (also clock out)
3. spend time away from work
4. change the date or time of something so that it happens earlier than expected
5. not have enough of something, usually time or money
6. find time to do something or see someone
7. continue doing something in a determined way
8. come to an end (of the period of time of a document or agreement); more formal equivalent is expire

**B At leisure**

When Florence does have spare time, she likes to relax. She usually **hangs out**\(^9\) with friends she was at school with. They have knocked around together\(^1\) for years and love whiling away\(^5\) their days off, going round the shops or just chatting at one of their homes. Sometimes they go away for a weekend and **muck about**\(^4\) at Florence’s aunt’s cottage in the countryside. Last time they did that, a colleague of Florence’s had a date on the train that she couldn’t get her tickets for because he didn’t really like her at first, especially as they always had to **hang on**\(^6\) while she got ready, but now they all like her very much.

1. spends a lot of time (informal)
2. spent a lot of time with one another because they are good friends (informal)
3. spending time in a relaxed way either because they are waiting for something or have nothing special to do
4. waste time doing silly things (informal)
5. spent time with them, especially when they did not want her with them
6. wait, usually for a short time (informal)
22.1 Complete these sentences with a verb from A.
1 I'm afraid I'm a bit __________________ for cash today. Could you lend me some?
2 Oh dear! My passport has __________________ out. I must renew it before our trip.
3 I usually __________________ on at 9 a.m. every day, but if my train is late it might be
9.15. I __________________ off at 5 p.m., but sometimes I can finish a bit earlier on
Fridays.
4 Mr. Chan wants to __________________ the meeting forward to this week as he's busy
all next week. I'm not sure if we can __________________ it in this week as we're ever so
busy too.
5 If we __________________ on after lunch we can probably finish the report by 5 p.m.
6 I'm going to __________________ some time off next month and go and stay with my
parents.

22.2 Write an appropriate question to fit each answer.
1 Oh, I usually just hang out with friends, or sometimes I do some sport.
   __________________
2 Well, he never studied, he just spent all his time mucking about, so it's no surprise.
   __________________
3 Oh, about ten years. We used to knock around together as teenagers.
   __________________
4 No, she's not a friend. She just latched on to our group and followed us.
   __________________
5 Oh, it's great for whiling away the time if you're waiting for a plane or a train.
   __________________
6 __________________
   Let's just hang on for five minutes. I want to speak to someone.

22.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.
1 We had to wait an hour for the next train, so we went for a walk to while off the time.
2 A young French woman latched to me at the party last night. I think she wanted to
practise her English.
3 I clock on work at 7.30 a.m. every morning.
4 We have to finish this job by six o'clock. We'd better press up with it.
5 I just don't know how we're going to fit three meetings on before the summer break.

Sometimes I get tired of just hanging out with other hats.

FOLLOW UP Write a description of how you spend your work and leisure time, using as many of the phrasal
verbs in this unit as you can.
Time: passing of time

The past

Journey into the past at the Charnbury Folk Museum

If you’re young, come on a journey into the past before you were born. If you’re a senior, let us take you back! to your childhood. Think back to what everyday life was like 50, 60, 100 years ago, before TV, before computers, before fridges and washing machines. Many of our exhibits date back to the early 19th century.

Is that old vacuum cleaner in your attic just a leftover from a bygone era or is it a piece of industrial history? Come and find out.

Open: Monday–Friday, 10 a.m.–5 p.m.
Admission: Adults – £2.00
Concessions – £1.20
Address: Palmer Square, Charnbury
Tel: 0211 4684536

1 make you remember a period or an event in the past
2 think about things that happened in the past
3 have existed since a particular time
4 (noun) something which exists from an earlier time
5 (adjective) from a time which does not exist any more

Note that bygone also exists as a noun, but it is usually always in the plural bygones.

Time moving

I’m sorry to hold you up but you must sign these forms before you go in. [delay you]
If there are no hold-ups, we should arrive by about seven o’clock. [noun: delays]
Jim, can you hurry the kids up. The coach is about to leave. [make them act more quickly]
Mum walks so fast. It’s quite hard to keep up with her. [go at the same speed as someone]
The meeting dragged on and everyone got irritable. [continued for too long]
I’m sorry I’m late. My French lesson ran on, so I didn’t leave school till 4.30 p.m. [continued for longer than expected]
Three weeks passed by before I got a reply to my letter of complaint. [went past]
It’s difficult to plan for the future. Nobody knows what lies ahead. [will happen in the future]

If a phrasal verb has a noun or adjectival form associated with it, learn them together and record them together in your vocabulary notebook, e.g. leftover and be left over.
23.1 Write the best phrasal verb expression from the options below to complete this text.

The film is a time travel adventure and I found it very entertaining through my companion felt that it was a bit. At the beginning it is (1) a bit. As the film (2) to the Iron Age where the hero is living in an ordinary Iron-Age life. He eats a mysterious plant, however, and the years suddenly start (3) like minutes. Suddenly he is in the future and, as he is now a (4) from a (5) era, he finds it very hard to understand what is going on.

This results in a number of amusing incidents. Although the plot is occasionally a little difficult to follow I would certainly recommend it.

1 a) passed by b) dragged on c) held up d) dated back
2 a) thinks back b) hurries you up c) takes you back d) holds you up
3 a) going by b) lying ahead c) hurrying up d) keeping up
4 a) bygone b) hold-up c) bygones d) leftover
5 a) bygone b) hold-up c) bygones d) leftover

23.2 Explain the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences.

1 a) The lecture ran on.
   b) The lecture dragged on.
2 a) John held us up.
   b) John hurried us up.
3 a) This song takes me back to my childhood.
   b) This song dates back to my childhood.
4 a) It was not easy to keep up with the children as we went through town.
   b) It was not easy to hurry up the children as we went through town.

23.3 Here are some things people might say relating to time. What does the speaker mean in each sentence? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 The older you get, the faster time goes by.
2 Music and smells have great powers to take you back.
3 Mr Jones is a leftover from a bygone age.
4 We should let bygones be bygones!
5 You never know what lies ahead.

23.4 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets. Write the words in the correct form.

1 The old oil lamps in my grandfather’s house looked like things that had survived from a different era. (LEFTOVER, BYGONE)
2 The smell of chalk always reminds me of my schooldays. (TAKE BACK)
3 The traffic was delayed on the motorway because of an accident. (HOLD-UP)
4 Sometimes, if the textbook is boring, the lesson seems to last longer than it should. (DRAG ON)
5 We can never know what the future will bring. (LIE AHEAD)
6 These pizzas were from the party. Nobody ate them. Would you like one? (LEFTOVER)
Location

Describing where places are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We stayed in a lovely hotel which was tucked away in a little valley.</td>
<td>was in a quiet or hidden place that not many people see or go to (from be tucked away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our room opened onto a balcony with lovely views of the countryside.</td>
<td>opened in the direction of the countryside or had a view of it (from open onto at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields and woods stretched away to the horizon.</td>
<td>continued over a long distance (from stretch away).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We could see a few farmhouses which were spread out over the landscape.</td>
<td>were in different parts of a large area and not close together (from be spread out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We felt we were completely cut off from the busy modern world!</td>
<td>very far away from other places and people (from be cut off)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

People in location

Read this conversation between two students.

Deb: Come in, John.

John: What a great room!

Deb: Well, I like it. It was a bit dull when I moved in, but I bought these nice curtains which help to brighten it up. In fact, I like it so much here that I'd rather stay in than go out most evenings.

John: You’re lucky! The room I rent is so miserable that I stay out as long as I can! I even stayed on in the library tonight until it closed! Anyhow, I've come to bring you your file - you left it behind at the seminar this morning.

Deb: Oh, thanks. How silly of me. I'm glad you noticed it.

John: Well, I stayed behind to ask the Prof some questions and then saw it lying there.

Deb: Thank you very much. Would you like a coffee now you're here?

John: Yes, I'll have a coffee. But I'd love to call back another time if that's OK?

Deb: Sure, that'd be nice.

---

1 make more attractive, often by adding colours
2 remain at home, especially in the evenings
3 come home late or not come home at night
4 stayed in a place longer than planned
5 left a place without taking something with you
6 did not leave a place when others left it
7 go back to a place to visit someone

Notice how three of the phrasal verbs in A are used in the passive: be tucked away, be spread out, be cut off. Make a special note in your vocabulary notebook if any phrasal verb construction is used in a particular way, e.g. in the passive, as a noun or as an adjective, and write down a typical example sentence to help you remember it.
Exercises

24.1 Complete these sentences to describe these pictures using phrasal verbs based on the verbs in brackets.

1. The fields (stretch) ...
2. The house (lock) ...
3. There are small houses (spread) ...
4. The house on the island (cut) ...
5. The room (open) ...

24.2 Which phrasal verb from B opposite means ...

1. the opposite of go out, as in meet friends or go to a restaurant?
2. not come home at night or come home late?
3. forget to take something with you when you go away from a place?
4. stay in a place when other people have left?
5. make something which is dull or boring more attractive or colourful?
6. stay somewhere longer than you planned?
7. go back to a place to see someone, often to visit someone briefly or to collect something?

24.3 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 24.2 to complete these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form.

1. I ________________ my floppy disk ________________ at the computer class. I'll have to go back and see if it's still in the machine.
2. When you were a teenager, did your parents allow you to ________________ late?
3. Shop assistant: I'm afraid your photographs aren't ready yet. It will be another couple of hours.
   Customer: Okay. I'll ________________ tomorrow.
4. We've decided to paint the kitchen to ________________ it ________________ a bit. It's so gloomy and dull at the moment.
5. I'm really tired. I think I'll ________________ tonight and not go to the party after all, sorry.
6. The teacher asked the naughty boy to ________________ after the lesson.
7. We loved the resort so much we decided to ________________ another week, even though our friends had gone home.

Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionaries website at dictionary.cambridge.org and select the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. In the search box, type behind and then search. From the list of phrasal verbs with behind, click on three that you are not familiar with and study the explanations.
25

Cause and effect

A number of phrasal verbs associated with cause and effect have the particle off.

The terrorists set the bomb off in the middle of the rush hour. [caused an explosion]

We accidentally set off the burglar alarm when we came into the house. [made the alarm ring]

The scandal set off a series of events which caused the collapse of the government and a general election. [caused a series of events or a lot of activity, often without intending to do so]

You shouldn’t have mentioned flying saucers. You’ve set him off now. He’ll talk for hours. [made him start to talk about something he often talks about]

The ending of the play really set her off. I didn’t know whether she was laughing or crying. [made her start to laugh or cry]

The crisis sparked off a bitter civil war. [caused something to suddenly happen or exist]

The Prime Minister’s speech triggered off violent protests in cities up and down the country. [made something suddenly begin, often a difficult or violent situation]

Other cause and effect verbs

Read these spoken extracts.

The new airport has brought about1 a lot of changes on this island.

I don’t know what lies behind2 Mr Wild’s attack on me. Maybe he’s trying to pay me back3 for something I said about him. Or maybe he’s just stirring things up4.

This photograph brings back5 memories of when we lived in Scotland, when I was a child.

The doctors still haven’t ruled out6 the possibility that he might have cancer.

I think most problems teenagers experience spring from7 a feeling of insecurity.

1 made something happen
2 is the real reason for
3 do something unpleasant to me because I have done something unpleasant to him
4 causing arguments or bad feeling between people, usually on purpose
5 makes me remember or think about something from the past
6 decided that something is impossible
7 are caused by
25.1 Choose the best phrasal verb from the box to complete each sentence. Write the verb in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>behind</td>
<td>behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stir</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spark</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. That song always __________________ wonderful memories whenever I hear it.
2. I think my problems at work __________________ the fact that I never really wanted to go into accounting as a career.
3. I wonder what really ______________ Maria's dislike of Paul.
4. I don't like the way Maxine is always trying to ______________ trouble between us.
5. The film ______________ a lively discussion in the class.
6. The tragic pictures of the earthquake victims ______________ her ______________, and she just couldn't stop crying.

25.2 Fill in the gaps in the paragraph below, using the correct verb or particle.

There has been a lot of discussion in the newspapers about what triggered ______________ (1) the recent explosion in the city centre. Some people believe that a bomb was ______________ (2) off by a terrorist group who hope to ______________ (3) the downfall of the government. Others believe that the explosion was probably sparked ______________ (4) by an electrical fault and have ______________ (5) out any criminal activity. But the question still remains: was it a deliberate explosion set ______________ (6) by a group who wanted to ______________ (7) things up in order to ______________ (8) the government back for some injustice?

25.3 Which word from the box provides the best ending for these sentences?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suspect</td>
<td>suspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireworks</td>
<td>firework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memories</td>
<td>memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feelings</td>
<td>feeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reforms</td>
<td>reform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violence</td>
<td>violent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. At midnight on New Year's Eve we usually set off some __________________.
2. The police used fingerprint tests to rule out some __________________.
3. The political demonstration triggered off __________________.
4. That music brings back __________________.
5. The government plans to bring about __________________.
6. Violet's comments stirred up a lot of bad __________________.

25.4 Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page. Write the verb in the correct form.

1. Take no notice of what he says. He's always trying to ______________ trouble.
2. She vowed that one day she'd ______________ for all the heartbreak he had caused her.
3. I wonder what ______________ the protests last week.
4. The decision to increase taxes ______________ demonstrations all across the country.
5. Detectives still haven't ______________ the possibility of murder.
6. His therapist thought that his unhappiness ______________ a traumatic experience in his childhood.
Change

**Up meaning more or better**

When *up* is used in a phrasal verb with an idea of change, it often adds an idea of becoming more or better.

The number of students getting good marks in their exams is going up. [increasing]

I was afraid no-one would come to my lecture, but the room is filling up nicely now. [becoming fuller]

Things were bad last week but the situation is looking up now. [improving]

Business was down at the beginning of the year, but is picking up now. [improving after a bad period]

Would you like me to heat up the rice or will you have it cold? [make warmer]

Simon’s been ignoring the situation for ages – it’s time he woke up to what’s happening. [became more aware of a situation or problem]

---

**Other phrasal verbs relating to change**

1. noun: a change from using or having one thing to using or having another (from change over)
2. gradually stopped using
3. gradually started using
4. develop or happen
5. became less important and were then forgotten

When I look back over the last year I see an awful lot of changes in my life. For instance at work, there has been an almost total changeover of staff in the office. Then during the year we have phased out all the old computers and phased in a completely new system of office administration. I wasn’t sure how things would pan out at first and there were a few problems to begin with. However, the arguments about the new system ‘mown over’ quite quickly.

At the beginning of the year, my girlfriend left me and it took me a while to get over that. But everything’s fine with my personal life too now. Best of all, of course, is the fact that I’ve managed to give up smoking this year. I didn’t feel too good for the first few weeks but that’s all worn off now. I stuck with my new regime and now I feel fitter than I have for ages.

---

**TIP**

Sometimes it may help to learn phrasal verbs in pairs of opposites, e.g. phone in or phone out a new system; heat up or cool down food; take up or give up an activity; prices go up or go down.

---

56  English Phrasal Verbs in Use
26.1 Look at these pictures and then complete the sentences about them below, using phrasal verbs from A.

1. Sales have .................................. during the last few months.
2. I was in the kitchen .................................. some soup when I heard the phone.
3. Mobile phone use is .................................. all the time.
4. The bus isn’t full yet, but it’s ..................................

26.2. Complete these sentences using the two verbs from A opposite which you did not use in exercise 26.1.

1. It’s time you .................................. to reality and went out and found a job.
2. The economic situation is definitely ..................................: exports have increased and unemployment is down.

26.3 Complete the word puzzle.

Across
1. change from one thing to another [noun]
2. We can’t change it; we’re .................................. with it.
3. I’m angry, but I’ll .................................. over it.
4. The scandal will .................................. over after a few months.

Down
5. The firm will .................................. in a new pension scheme.
6. I’m not sure how the situation will .................................. out.
7. I think I’ll .................................. up soccer and start playing golf instead.
8. I had an injection at the dentist’s and it hasn’t .................................. off yet, so I can’t eat properly.

26.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verb expressions in these sentences.

1. The overcharge to the new accounting system has caused endless problems.
2. There was a lot of trouble in the office last month, but it’s all blown up now and things are back to normal.
3. Shall I hot up that pizza for you? I expect it’s gone cold by now.
4. All these old telephones will be faced out over the next year and we’ll get new, digital ones.
Success and failure

**NORTHCORP BRINGS OFF $10M DEAL**
Northcorp Telecommunications announced last night that the company had secured a $10m dollar deal in the face of severe competitions and despite many difficulties.

**STARFINDER CD TAKES OFF**
The first CD by the group which won the TV show 'Starfinder', where bands competed for a record contract, has become instantly popular one day after it was released, and is now number one.

**TINA TAKES OVER AS NUMBER ONE POP IDOL**
18-year-old singer Tina Hoogan has been voted number one female performer in a national pop poll, replacing last year's winner, Francis Moon as the country's most popular female artist.

**MINI-BALLOON ATTEMPT COMES OFF DESPITE WEATHER**
An attempt to fly a mini hot-air balloon under Tower Bridge in London has succeeded, despite fog and rain which threatened to prevent the event.

**UMBRELLAS FAIL TO CATCH ON WITH TEENAGERS**
An attempt by a Japanese company to market a new range of jazzy umbrellas to teenagers has failed. Sales show that they have not become as popular as the company hoped.

**DRUMA PULLS OFF RECORD ATTEMPT ZAFI DRUMA**
Yesterday succeeded in winning the 100m, 400m and 800m all on the same day at the International Athletics Championships in Mexico City, despite fierce international competition.

**DOWNFALL OF REBEL GROUP MARKS END OF CIVIL WAR**
The failure of the rebel army to hold on to the western part of Kshaba and the rapid collapse of popular support for the rebels means the country's civil war is at an end.

**PLAN TO BUILD NEW STADIUM FALLS THROUGH**
The President of the Football Association announced last night that the plan to build a new £200m national stadium has failed and the stadium will not be built.

---

**Read this speech by a headteacher to pupils who are leaving school.**

When you leave this school, we hope you will build on what you have learnt here. You must not expect to just walk into a highly-paid job, but most of you will, with hard work and self-discipline, succeed and achieve great things. Never be content to just muddle through as so many people do, always trying to catch up and failing to do so. Hard work, dedication and commitment will, in the end, pay off. To keep up with the competition we all have to give 100%, so that our country can stay ahead in business and industry. It will be your job to make this happen. Good luck.

---

**TIP**

Where phrasal verbs fall naturally into two groups with opposite meanings, e.g. success versus failure.

1. Use a success or achievement as a base from which to achieve more success.
2. Get very easy.
3. Succeed in doing something even though you have difficulties because you do not really know how to do it.
4. Reach the same quality or standard as some other.
5. Be successful.
6. Make progress at the same speed as something or someone else so that you stay at the same level as them.
7. Continue to be more advanced and successful than other people.
27.1 Find phrasal verb expressions from A on the opposite page that match these definitions.
1 fail to happen
2 replace someone in a position of success
3 the sudden failure of a person or organisation
4 suddenly become successful or popular
5 succeed in achieving something difficult
6 happen successfully or as planned

27.2 Decide whether these phrasal verbs are mainly associated with success or with failure, by writing S or F in the box.
1 bring off ☐ 4 pay off ☐
2 come off ☐ 5 catch up ☐
3 muddle through ☐ 6 stay ahead ☐
7 take off ☐ 8 fail through ☐
9 walk into ☐

27.3 Fill the gaps in this school report with phrasal verbs from B opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>Tina's work in history is not very good but she does manage to hand in her work on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Tina has managed to successfully catch up on the work she fell behind last year in order to make excellent progress this term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Tina missed a lot of schoolwork through illness at the beginning of term, but she has managed to keep up with the work now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Tina has always been top of the class in geography and she has managed to hand in all of her work this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>Tina has never found physics easy but her hard work is beginning to pay off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.4 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets. Write the verb in the correct form.
1 Miranda immediately got a job in London. (WALK)
2 Jim's hard work eventually brought him success. (PAY)
3 The company is hoping to make an important deal this week. (PULL)
4 Rachel never expected her singing career to meet with such instant success. (TAKE)
5 The project may well not happen because of a lack of funds. (WALK)
6 Teri finds it hard to make as much progress as the other kids in her class. (KEEP)
7 The new design of mobile phone has become successful almost overnight. (CATCH)
8 Top software companies are finding it increasingly difficult to remain in front of their competitors. (STAY)
Starting and finishing

Starting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you ...</th>
<th>then you ...</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>set about something/doing something</td>
<td>start doing something that uses a lot of time or energy</td>
<td>The kitchen looked as if it hadn’t been cleaned or tidied for months but Jessica set about making it look as good as new.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set out</td>
<td>start a journey</td>
<td>We set out at 7 a.m. and didn’t return until after dark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start off or start out</td>
<td>begin life, existence or a profession in a particular way</td>
<td>Yvonne started out as a model but soon realised that it was not the career for her.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the noun at the outset, from the verb set out, means the beginning, e.g. There were problems from the outset and things became progressively worse.

Finishing

Joe called off the building work his team was doing on the new company offices because he had heard that the company was going bankrupt. He knew the money was going to dry up, so he was not prepared to continue. Most of the team immediately broke off what they were doing but some of them first finished off the task they were working on. Joe himself quickly polished off the last of his paperwork and then packed up too.

1 decided to stop an activity that had already started
2 end or stop coming
3 stopped or interrupted
4 completed the last part of what they were doing
5 finished something quickly and easily
6 collected his things together, usually after finishing doing something

Suzanna is trying to give up smoking. At first she cut down to five rather than fifteen a day, but she is finding it very hard. She says that a cigarette helps her to wind down after a hard day at work. She hopes her determination won’t fizzle out after a few weeks as she is very anxious not to give up this new regime.

1 stop doing or having something
2 reduced the amount or number
3 gradually relax after something that has made you feel tired or worried
4 gradually end or disappear, usually in a disappointing way
5 stop doing something before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult
Exercises

28.1 Complete these comments by various people with words from the box below. Write the words in the correct form.

1. I ______________________ out as a chemist but I knew from the _______ that it wasn’t what I wanted to do. So I ______________ it in and joined the navy instead.

2. I had 50 exam papers to correct that day, so I ______________ about marking them. I managed to ______________ off about 20 by 12.30, so I ___________________ off for lunch and decided to ______________ the job off later.

3. I was putting on weight, so I decided to __________________ down on fatty foods. I __________________ down on sweet drinks too, but I’m afraid my efforts __________________ out after a couple of weeks and now I’m back where I started.

4. Our research project was getting nowhere, and our funds were __________________ up. We didn’t really want to ______________ the whole thing off, but we had no choice. We’re very disappointed.

28.2 Answer these questions about yourself, using full sentences with a phrasal verb.

1. What should you set about doing soon, even though you don’t really want to?
2. Can you think of something you were planning to do but then were forced to call off?
3. What helps you to wind down when you are tired or stressed?
4. What do you eat or drink too much of which you think you should cut down on?
5. What did you once start off doing but later gave up?

"You polished off all the cakes before I got here!"

FOLLOW UP

Go to the Cambridge University Press dictionaries online website at dictionary.cambridge.org and select the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs. In the search box, enter the word start. If you do not have Internet access, look up the word start in a good monolingual or bilingual dictionary. How many more phrasal verbs can you find based on start?

English Phrasal Verbs in Use   61
### Actions and movement with down and up

**Down** in phrasal verbs about actions can mean towards the ground, towards a lower level, or less intense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She fell down and broke her arm.</td>
<td>fell to the ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you reach that book down for me?</td>
<td>get something that is above your head by reaching with your hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow down! There's a police car behind us.</td>
<td>drive slower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Up** in phrasal verbs about actions can mean towards a higher level, in a complete way, or to a greater degree.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I must wrap up Stella's birthday present. Do you have any nice paper?</td>
<td>cover in paper, especially in order to give as a present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you help me to tie up this package? I don't want it to get damaged in the post.</td>
<td>put string or rope around something so that it is fastened together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you help me blow up these balloons for the party?</td>
<td>fill with air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you pick up that box and follow me, please? It has the exam papers in it.</td>
<td>lift using your hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He felt very angry and tore her letter up</td>
<td>tear into a lot of small pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you move up and let Christine sit next to you?</td>
<td>move slightly so that there is enough space for someone else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have a bad leg, I don't want to slow you up, so go ahead and don't wait for me.</td>
<td>make someone or something slower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other action and movement verbs

Move over! I need to sit down. (change the place where you are sitting or standing so that there is space for someone else to sit or stand)

I'm just popping out for a newspaper. Do you want anything from the shop? [informal: leaving the place where I am to go somewhere for a short time]

I reached out for the light switch but couldn't find it in the dark, [stretched my arm in front of my body, usually in order to get or touch something]

Can you help me on/off with these boots, please? [help me put on / take off a piece of clothing]
Exercises

29.1 Read these sentences and answer the questions.
1 Could you reach down that saucepan for me, please?
   Where do you think the saucepan is?
2 Emily has just popped out of the office.
   Is Emily going home for the day?
3 If Charlie moves up a bit, there'll be room for all of us.
   Where does Charlie have to move – a bit higher or closer to someone?
4 If Sonia moves over, then Natasha can sit next to Nicholas.
   Does Sonia have to move more or less than Charlie in sentence 3?
5 Tear the cloth up into small pieces and soak them in the dye for a couple of hours.
   Is it necessary to use scissors to make the cloth into small pieces?
6 Help your grandmother on with her coat, Julie.
   Is Julie's grandmother about to go outside or inside?

29.2 Rewrite these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page which have the opposite meaning to the underlined verbs.
1 The children helped me to unwrap the parcel.
   Can you untie Billy's shoe laces for him?
2 Put down the ball at once.
   Hurry up – it's beginning to snow and there's ice on the road.
3 Jill loves bursting balloons!

29.3 Look at these pictures and write answers to the questions about them using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 What has happened to the tree?
2 What's the woman doing?
3 What is the man doing?
4 What's the boy doing?
5 What's the man doing?
6 What's the woman doing?

29.4 Choose the correct verbs to complete these sentences.
1 Their heavy rucksacks ................................ the climbers up.
2 In the darkness of the cinema he ............................... out and took her hand.
3 I'm just going to ................................. out to the post office. I won't be long.
4 Your bike tyres are flat. Let me ............................... them up for you.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 63
Destroying and reacting to destruction

Here are some phrasal verbs which relate to the concept of destruction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall apart</td>
<td>break into pieces because of being too old or too weak</td>
<td>Take care with this priceless old book. It's beginning to fall apart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull down sth or</td>
<td>destroy a building or other structure because it is not wanted any more</td>
<td>They are planning to pull down the old police station and build a new one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull sth down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>screw up sth or</td>
<td>twist or crush paper or material with your hands</td>
<td>You can tell he’s nervous – look how he’s screwing up those scraps of paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>screw sth up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear apart sth or</td>
<td>pull something violently so that it breaks into two or more pieces</td>
<td>The customs officers tore the bag apart and found the hidden drugs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear sth apart</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear down sth or</td>
<td>violently destroy a building or other structure because it is not wanted</td>
<td>I can't bear to watch them tearing down the school we used to go to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear sth down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock over sth or</td>
<td>hit or push someone or something, usually accidentally, so that they fall</td>
<td>As she was dusting the room she knocked over a vase and spill water all over the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock sth over</td>
<td>to the ground or onto their side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put out sth or</td>
<td>make something that is burning, e.g. a fire or cigarette, stop burning</td>
<td>We managed to put the fire out before the fire brigade arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root out sth or</td>
<td>find and get rid of the thing or person that is causing a problem</td>
<td>The government says it will root out crime and the causes of crime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root sth out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamp out sth or</td>
<td>get rid of something that is considered wrong or harmful</td>
<td>The government says it is doing all it can to stamp out the problem of drugs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamp sth out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reacting to destruction and negative situations

FIGHT TO SAVE VILLAGE HOME

MEANBOROUGH LOCAL COUNCIL has decided to destroy a beautiful old cottage in the village of Warcholt in order to widen the main road. However, the villagers are equally determined to fight back. The authorities want to evict an 89-year-old lady, Doris Jakes, who has lived all her life in the cottage, and seem to be bending over backwards to persuade her to go and live in a modern old peoples’ home in the nearest town.

Doris does not want to move and villagers are doing all they can to see her through her difficult time. Doris may seem old and harmless but she has turned out several officers from the council who have tried to get her to change her mind. There was a recent setback for Doris when she was told that she couldn’t stay in the cottage because repairs needed to be done to the roof. However, her neighbour, a builder, quickly saw 63 it and her roof is now in good repair, so she is still in the cottage and hopes to win her battle.
Exercises

30.1 Complete these sentences using verbs from the table in A opposite.
1 The border police have tried unsuccessfully to .................................................. out illegal immigration.
2 When the thefts at the school happened the headteacher promised to .......................................... out the person or persons responsible.
3 We got a lovely old chair from my grandmother's house when she died but it was ........................................... apart so we had it restored.
4 She read the letter then .................................................. it up and threw it angrily into the wastepaper basket.
5 I got so excited I .................................................. over my coffee cup and made a terrible stain on the tablecloth.

30.2 Which phrasal verbs do these pictures illustrate? Write a sentence to describe what the animals or people in each picture are doing, using the appropriate phrasal verb from the opposite page.

30.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of these conversations, using phrasal verbs from B opposite.
1 Pedro: I'm sorry you didn't get the funds you applied for to do your research.
Gisela: Yes, well, it was a bit of a disappointment and I did waste a bit of time because of it but I've applied for a different grant, and hope I'll get that.

2 Tony: Are you managing to survive without working?
Dan: Well, my parents have lent me some money to enable me to survive while I'm studying.

3 Connie: Teachers suffered very badly under the last government – their salaries fell and their conditions got worse.
Hilda: Yes, but they are not just reacting passively any more now and their union is much stronger.

4 Ruth: Did you get much support from Mr Crembie?
Bob: Oh yes, he did absolutely everything possible to help me.

5 Tom: I hear you experienced Lena's bad temper this morning!
Eric: Yes, I made an innocent comment and she just reacted really furiously.

6 Olive: The photocopier's not working again.
Gareth: OK, don't worry, I'll go and fix it.
Communication

Managing subjects and topics

Kathryn Taylor is speaking to her colleagues at a weekly business meeting. She gives an outline of what she’s going to say.

1. start to talk about
2. start talking about after discussing something else
3. repeat something, usually quickly, to make sure it is correct
4. not discuss it so that we can discuss something else
5. return to discuss it at a future time
6. explain in detail
7. discuss or give our attention to
town: a practice or repetition to make sure something is correct (from the verb run through)

Note that some of the phrasal verbs above can have the object before or after the particle:

bring sth up or bring up sth
leave sth aside or leave aside sth
spell sth out or spell out sth

Communicating and interacting with others

In these dialogues the second speaker uses a phrasal verb to repeat the first speaker’s meaning.

Jim: I wish they had done what they said they would do.
Nan: Yes, they should have kept to what they promised and not changed their minds.
Freda: I don’t know who to ask for help or advice on this matter. It’s very delicate.
Lou: Yes, it’s difficult to know who to turn to, isn’t it?
Anne: Lucy was extremely enthusiastic and excited about coming to work for us.
Fiona: Yes, she was absolutely bubbling over with excitement when I spoke to her.
Paul: She acts as if she was the boss, telling everyone what to do.
Mia: Yes, she’s always ordering people about/around.
Karen: I saw a sign saying that the car park will be closed tomorrow. Can you tell everybody else, please?
Tony: Yes, I’ll pass the news on*. I’ll send an e-mail to everyone in the office.
Harry: I see Grace said no to the job.
Zoe: Yes, she turned the offer down*.

*The object can also appear after the particle in these two phrasal verbs.
31.1 Look at the picture and answer the questions below.

1 Which speaker wants to introduce a new topic now?
2 Which speaker would welcome a fuller explanation?
3 Which two speakers want to deal with a topic later on?
4 Which speaker would like to repeat something to make sure everyone understands it?

31.2 Choose the best phrasal verbs from the opposite page to complete these sentences.

1 I’m sorry, but I’m going to have to _______________ your invitation as I’ll be away then.
2 Kate is such a bossy person, always _______________ people.
3 Let’s _______________ this question _______________ for now and return to it when we’ve all read the report.
4 How on earth did we _______________ such an extraordinary topic of conversation?
5 If she has a problem, she knows she can always _______________ her aunt for help.
6 Jill is thrilled with her new flat – she is _______________ with enthusiasm.
7 In this essay I plan to _______________ the causes of the French Revolution from a new perspective.
8 Let’s try to _______________ the agenda and not get distracted.
9 Could you _______________ a message to Lee when you see him later?

31.3 Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with communicating. Try to explain the meanings of the verbs in bold. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 They won’t be able to hear you at the back of the hall. You’ll have to speak up.
2 Class 2B seem to spend most of their time in my lessons looking out of the window – I just don’t know if I am getting through to them or not.
3 Although I think most of the staff agree with me, no-one else is prepared to speak up.
4 The arrangements for the conference are rather complicated and I hope I’ll be able to get the details across to everyone.
5 I’m sorry to but in but I couldn’t help hearing you mention that you come from Edinburgh.
6 Jack was halfway through his speech when he dried up.
Describing people

Natasha and I love going to posh restaurants where we have to dress up\(^1\) though Natasha always finds it hard to decide what to put on\(^2\). Her favourite evening dress is long, red and tight-fitting and she has to get me to help her do up\(^3\) the zip. As we live in Moscow we have to wrap up\(^4\) well before going out in winter and she puts a long fur coat on\(^5\) over her dress. As soon as we arrive anywhere, she goes straight to the ladies’ room to freshen up\(^6\).

1. put on formal or special clothes
2. put a piece of clothing onto your body
3. fasten
4. dress in warm clothes
5. see note 2
6. brush your hair, refresh your make-up, or have a quick wash

Describing places

When we arrived in the town, we were surprised to see how rundown\(^7\) it looked. The streets were littered with\(^8\) rubbish. However, one building in the town centre stood out\(^8\). Its tidy window boxes and fresh paint set it apart\(^9\). There was a lovely little lamp sticking out\(^1\) from one corner. When we went closer we found it was the Town Museum.

1. (adjective) shabby, in a poor condition
2. (always passive) contained a lot of
3. something, usually something negative
4. was noticeable because it was different
5. made it different, usually better, than others of the same type
6. coming out beyond the edge or surface

Comparing and contrasting people and things

Joe: I can never tell one twin from the other, can you?
Mel: No, I can never tell them apart.

Her handbag and boots go very well together.

Lee: Joe will always stand out in a crowd.
[look different from others]
Vic: Yes, I’m sure he’ll never blend in!
[look or seem the same as those around him so he is not noticed]
32.1 Complete these sentences, using a phrasal verb from A.
1. You've had such a long journey. Would you like some time to _______ before we go out to dinner?
2. It's a very informal party. You don't have to _______.
3. Will you help me _______ my dress? I can't reach the buttons at the back.
4. It's freezing cold today, so if you're going out, do _______ well, and _______ a scarf.

32.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. Think about the meaning as well as the grammar of the sentences.
1. I don't want to wear my new jacket tonight. You can put on it if you like.
2. Although the house looked rundown from the outside, it was very shabby inside.
3. If you're going out in the snow, make sure you wrap on well.
4. Do you think this scarf and coat get together OK?
5. He hates the way his ears stick off.
6. It takes me a long time to get the kids ready in the morning because Sammy and Lisa can't do on their own shoes yet.
7. Bill and his brother are so alike - I can't see one from the other.
8. It's a very formal party, so you don't need to dress up.

32.3 Complete this text using words from the opposite page:
The city council are trying to improve some of the older __________ (1) parts of the city. They're trying to construct new buildings which will blend __________ (2) with the existing architecture. There's one new building that __________ (3) out, which I like very much. It has a beautiful decorated facade and little statues which __________ (4) out from the roof, which __________ (5) it apart from all the other buildings.

32.4 Some of the phrasal verbs from this unit can be used in a metaphorical way. Try to work out the metaphorical meaning of these phrasal verbs from their basic meaning by answering the questions below:
1. Military history is littered with examples of armies being destroyed because of generals or politicians making silly mistakes.
   Are there many or few examples of silly mistakes in military history?
2. I thought Tom Hanks' performance in that film really stood out.
   Did the speaker think that Tom Hanks' performance was ordinary or special?
3. The quality of Jan's descriptive writing really sets her work apart from that of the other students in the class.
   Is Jan's writing better or worse than that of the other students?
4. I can't tell John's voice from his father's on the phone.
   Does John's voice sound like his father's on the phone?
5. Bringing a new actor into the series might freshen things up.
   Does the speaker think that the new actor will spoil or improve the series?
Describing public events

A review of an event

The show was fully booked up for weeks, and when it opened last night, the public poured in and very soon the London Arts Centre was packed out. But why? What had they come to see? Human beings who take off circus animals, with men in cat suits who stand in for the real lions and tigers. The show was put on by its creators to protest against traditional circuses and to send a message about cruelty to animals. The show was timed to tie in with the National Protection of Animals Week. It was a good idea, but the standard of the performances was third-rate and an embarrassing number of people simply walked out before it ended. There were some amusing moments when the performers set up typical circus folk, but overall it was a dismal show. Despite the large turnout for the show's first night, I doubt it will attract many people during the rest of its seven-day run.

H. ACKDOFF

Other verbs connected with events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>call off sth or call sth off</td>
<td>cancel something, especially because it no longer seems possible or useful</td>
<td>We decided to call off the sports event as we'd only sold 10 tickets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cram into/into somewhere</td>
<td>go into a place even though it is too small and becomes very full</td>
<td>The hall seated 200 but more than 300 crammed into it for the meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass off</td>
<td>happen, especially in a good way</td>
<td>The demonstration passed off peacefully, despite fears that there would be violence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off sth or put sth off</td>
<td>postpone to a later date</td>
<td>We had to put off the match because the rain was so heavy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put forward/back sth or put sth forward/back</td>
<td>arrange something for an earlier/later time</td>
<td>We've put the time of the staff meeting forward/back so more people can come.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is often a good idea to learn a group of phrasal verbs connected together into a story, like the review in A above. Make up your own stories for verbs you have written down in your vocabulary notebook.
Exercises

33.1 Answer the following questions about the phrasal verbs from A, using full sentences.
1 If a performance is booked up, can you get tickets for it or not?
2 If people are said to pour in (a place), what do you know about the number of people?
3 If people cram into a room, what is the room then like?
4 What kind of events might be put on to tie in with National Poetry Week?
5 Is a comedian more likely to send up politicians or post office workers?
6 When would an actor need someone to stand in for them?

33.2 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.
1 It was so cold in the hall that a few people _________________ out before the end of the concert.
   a) turned  b) walked  c) poured  d) packed
2 The class went to see the performance of Macbeth because it _________________ in well
   with the project they were doing on Scottish history.
   a) crammed  b) stood  c) tied  d) booked
3 We were delighted when we saw how many people had _________________ out for the meeting.
   a) turned  b) taken  c) stood  d) walked
4 The teacher was worried about the play her young class was putting on for the parents
   but, fortunately, everything _________________ off without any problems.
   a) took  b) passed  c) walked  d) called
5 Morag is very good at _________________ off the teachers in her school,
   a) sending  b) calling  c) taking  d) putting
6 The meeting had to be _________________ forward to 9 a.m.
   a) made  b) sent  c) turned  d) put

33.3 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb from the opposite page.
1 The concert has been _________________ because the main performer is ill.
2 My aunt has a job going round different schools _________________ for teachers who are sick.
3 This year the Drama Club is going to _________________ a performance of Hamlet.
4 That actor is very good at _________________ the Prime Minister.
5 The shops are usually _________________ during the sales.
6 My uncle has arranged his trip to this country to _________________ with my parents' anniversary.

33.4 Complete this e-mail, using the correct phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

Hi, John,

You must go and see the show that the Students' Arts Club is _________________ (1) this week.
It's brilliant and it _________________ (2) very well with the study of satire that we're doing at
the moment in our literature lectures. We were lucky to get tickets as we'd been told that it
was sold out _________________ (3) but we managed to get the last two and to _________________ (4) the
hall along with at least 2,000 other people. The actors were so good at _________________ (5)
the bureaucracy in this college and Ben Hurley was brilliant at _________________ (6) the Dean.
No-one _________________ (7) early - not even the Dean, who seemed to be enjoying himself
as much as everyone else! It's been so popular that the play planned for next week has been
_______________ (8) till next month so the Club can hold some extra performances.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 71
Describing situations

Dialogues commenting on situations

Mary: It’s such a cold day. I wish I could get out of the bike ride Jack’s planned. [avoid doing something that you should do, often by giving an excuse]

Bill: Why don’t you suggest cancelling it? I’m sure the others would also prefer not to go in weather like this.

Sandy: I have identical twins, Flora and Florence, in my class – I always mix them up. [confuse two people or things by thinking that one person or thing is the other person or thing]

Mike: Yes, I muddle them up too. It doesn’t help that their names are so similar. [confuse two people or things in your mind]

Meg: I really don’t like sharing an office with Sue – she thinks the whole world revolves around her and her insignificant problems. [thinks she’s more important than anyone else]

Anna: Yes, I know. I think she is one of the most self-centred people I’ve ever met.

John: We’ve been running up against quite a lot of problems here recently.

Rita: I know. As soon as we deal with one problem, another immediately crops up and I now feel I can’t bank on things turning out well in the end.

Milly: The situation at work is so annoying at the moment! There’s been a small mix-up of orders and everyone is making a great drama out of it.

Tom: Oh come on! You can rise above it. Just back off and let others handle things.

An island revolution

Holidaymakers who were caught up last week in a revolution on the Caribbean island of St. Maria have now returned home. The situation first boiled up when rebels seized the Presidential Palace. The returning tourists report that they were all thrown together in one of the largest hotels and were not allowed to leave until the situation calmed down.

1 beginning to experience
2 suddenly appears, usually when you are not expecting it
3 depend on something happening
4 happening in a particular way or having a particular result
5 (noun) mistake caused by confusion
6 not allow something bad that is happening or is being done to you to upset you or affect your behaviour
7 stop being involved in a situation, especially to let others deal with it themselves

1 (always in passive) involved in a situation, often when you don’t want to be
2 (informal) became more exciting, with a lot more activity (compare with heat up which is used about food, see Units 26 and 60)
3 forced to be together and get to know each other
4 became more peaceful
Exercises

34.1 Match the statements on the left with a suitable response on the right.

1. I'm so worried about what Jim is doing.\hspace{0.5cm}
   - I've run up against that problem too.

2. All the pages are in the wrong order in this report.\hspace{0.5cm}
   - I know, but I'm sure everything will turn out all right in the end.

3. Sometimes the printer will only print black and white.\hspace{0.5cm}
   - I wouldn't look on it.

4. I need you here next Monday.\hspace{0.5cm}
   - I know, but try to rise above it.

5. I do hope the bus arrives on time.\hspace{0.5cm}
   - I must have mixed up the details.

6. I feel so angry about what's happened.\hspace{0.5cm}
   - OK. I'll see if I can get out of my trip to London.

34.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1. When you're a teenager it's easy to think the whole world ________________ around you and your personal problems.

2. There was a ________________ with the reservation — our room had been double-booked.

3. I think you should ________________ off a little and let her do what she wants.

4. Problems at work tend to ________________ up when you're least expecting them.

5. I hope everything ________________ out well for you in your new job.

34.3 Replace the underlined words with phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. I was in the capital city a month before the economic crisis exploded, but things were already beginning to become agitated and more intense, even then.

2. He went to the country as a news reporter, but became unintentionally involved in the civil war which started shortly after his arrival.

3. I might never have met Ken, but we had no choice but to live and work together during our military service and we've been friends ever since.

4. The situation in Cotron has become more peaceful now, but it's still too dangerous to go there for a holiday.

5. Try not to get so involved. Let them sort it out.

6. You can't trust him to help you.

Choose five of the phrasal verbs from this unit and use them in sentences about situations you have been in recently.
Giving and getting information

Referring to information in academic writing

This table shows phrasal verbs which are useful in academic writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come under sth</td>
<td>be included in or may be found in</td>
<td>Sanderson (1985) studied mistakes involving prepositions, tenses and other items which come under the heading of grammatical errors in second language learning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw on/upon sth</td>
<td>use information or your knowledge or experience of something to help you do something</td>
<td>In designing the experiment, Fiona Farr draws upon earlier studies done in America and Asia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point out sth (often + that)</td>
<td>present a new fact, especially one that is important in the present discussion or situation</td>
<td>Wills (1996) points out that economic statistics often show a sharp rise just before a serious recession.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn to sth/sth</td>
<td>begin to think, speak or write about a subject</td>
<td>I should now like to turn to another issue which is often neglected, parental control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Noticing and understanding information

In these conversations, the second person repeats what the first person says, using a phrasal verb.

Pam: I didn’t fully understand what he was saying for a few minutes.
Ed: Yes, it took me a few minutes to latch on to what he was talking about.
Rory: I found it difficult to understand the full importance of the decision.
Surya: Yes, me too. I found it hard to take in its significance at first.
Brioni: We must be careful to notice any difficulties that occur once we start the project.
Winston: Yes, we’ll have to watch out for possible problems.
Pepe: Could you try and get some information about how to contact Keith Phelps?
Rana: Yes, I’ll try and find out his contact details.
Olivia: Jill, will you make sure that Rita has sent those faxes for me?
Jill: Yes, I’ll check up on her right away and see if she’s done them.
Anne: Don, I can’t find that market report we wrote about three years ago?
Don: OK, I’ll try and track it down. I must have it on the computer somewhere.

Other verbs connected with information

Sally: What’s the capital of Ecuador?
Mick: Oh, Bogotá? No? Caracas? Oh, I don’t know, I give up. [stop trying to think of the answer to a joke or question]
Sally: It’s Quito.
I said something that upset Mo. I didn’t mean to, it just slipped out. [I didn’t intend to say it]
The total on the bid and the total on the credit card statement should match up, but don’t [be the same]. There must be a mistake.
### 35.1 Look at A and B. Then complete this book review using the phrasal verbs from the box below. Put the verbs into the most appropriate form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>check up on</th>
<th>come under</th>
<th>draw on</th>
<th>point out</th>
<th>track down</th>
<th>turn to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*Highland Tracks* is an unusual book about the history of Scotland. The author has managed to ___________ (1) a number of previously unpublished sources. He has ___________ (2) these to argue that the current political situation in the United Kingdom owes a great deal to the separate histories of Scotland and England. After analysing the historical relationship between these two countries, the author then ___________ (3) the relationship between Scotland and France. He ___________ (4) that traditionally they had a much warmer relationship than either country had with England. The writer uses his imagination quite freely and the book should really ___________ (5) the heading of fiction rather than non-fiction. It is a very interesting work although anyone seriously wishing to investigate Scottish history should ___________ (6) many of the facts presented by this author.

### 35.2 Correct the errors in this paragraph. There are seven in total. Each error is a matter of either an extra word or wrong word order.

Hannah and Bill were playing a game. Hannah had thought of a football star and Bill was trying to find who it was out. He turned his mother to but she pointed it out that she knew absolutely nothing about football. He would have to try to track the answer himself down and to watch out any clues for that Hannah might deliberately give. After ten minutes Bill still hadn’t latched up on so he gave himself up and Hannah told him the answer: Ronaldo.

### 35.3 Find three collocations for these verbs from the opposite page. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1. You might check up on ___________ or ___________.
2. You might point out ___________, ___________ or ___________.
3. Someone might find out ___________, ___________ or ___________.
4. You might take in ___________, ___________ or ___________.
5. ___________ or ___________ might slip out.

### 35.4 Some of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page are used in a metaphorical rather than a literal way. In the sentences below these verbs are used in a literal way. What do they mean?

1. As they drove through the town Gisela’s father pointed out anything he thought might interest the children.
2. In the scene at the end of the film, watch out for the man sitting in the café behind Leonardo DiCaprio – that’s my brother!
3. The dog quickly tracked the rabbit down to where it was hiding under the garden shed.
4. Marian managed to slip out of the house without anyone noticing.
5. Polly turned to the man on her left and started chatting to him about his work.
Talking about problems

Tom: What’s the matter? Why are you looking so worried?

Emily: I’ve got a few problems at work and I don’t know what to do about them.

Tom: Well, why don’t we talk them over today?

That might help you to sort yourself out.

Emily: OK, thanks. Well, first of all, Julia was going to give a very important presentation tomorrow but she says she’s ill and isn’t going to be able to do it.

I think she’s just bottled out as it’s for such an important client. Feeling a bit ill was just the perfect let-out for her. I’d do it myself but I’m busy with meetings all day.

Tom: Well, that calls for quick action if the presentation is tomorrow. You’d better do it yourself if it’s so important. Just cancel your other meetings.

Emily: I guess I’ll have to. The next problem is that my belongings have been missing from people’s desks during the day.

Tom: Oh dear. You should deal with that problem as quickly as possible. Let’s make a list of possible suspects...

1. discuss something before making a decision
2. spend time dealing with your personal problems
3. (informal) decided not to do something because she was afraid
4. (noun) excuse or way of avoiding doing something she said she’d do
5. needs or deserves a particular action or quality
6. take action to achieve something

Finding a solution

Now read what Emily did about her problems at work.

She faced up to the fact that she would have to do the important presentation herself, so she immediately contacted her personal assistant to ask her to see about postponing her meetings for the next day. As for the thefts, she realised that the solution to finding the office thief was working out exactly who could have been in the office when each of the thefts took place. So she came up with a plan that enabled her to check who had been there at each of the times concerned. That narrowed down the suspects to two people. She questioned them both and the guilty one soon confessed.

1. accepted that a difficult situation existed
2. deal with something or arrange for something to be done
3. would be found in (from the verb lie in something)
4. thought of or suggested something that might solve a problem
5. made something, usually a list or choice, smaller and clearer by removing what is irrelevant or less important
36.1 Match the newspaper headlines with the stories a–e below.
1 NEW POLICE SQUAD TO DEAL WITH ILLEGAL IMMIGRANTS
2 Garcia bottles out of contest with Paterson
3 POLICE NARROW DOWN SUSPECTS IN MURDER CASE
4 Education Minister to talk over problem with teaching unions
5 GOVERNMENT SEeks LET-OUT ON ELECTION PROMISE

a) Three men are to be interviewed in the Oxford area, following new information. Up to now there has been no real ...
b) If possible, ministers would like to be able to drop the pledge without angering the public ...
c) The team will be stationed at ports of entry and will have the task of checking anyone suspected of having arrived ...
d) The fight was arranged for September in Las Vegas, but now it will not take place. A spokesman for the 28-year-old ...
e) The minister said she would go into the discussions with an open mind, and that all the issues ...

36.2 A father is talking to his son who he thinks is very lazy. The underlined expressions have got mixed up. The particles are correct, but the verbs are incorrect. Put the correct verbs in.

36.3 This is how Tom and Emily's conversation in A continued. What do you think the five underlined phrasal verbs mean?

Emily: Well, it's just dawned on me that the thefts have always happened on the top floor. So it couldn't be anyone who never goes up there. That actually rules out quite a lot of people.

Tom: Think some more about exactly when and where things were stolen and you'll probably find that the answer jumps out at you.

Emily: Thanks, Tom. It's good to work through things with you! It really helps me to sort things out!

Choose five of the phrasal verbs from this unit that you would particularly like to learn. Look them up in a good dictionary, for example the Cambridge International Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs, and copy out any useful example sentences that you find there.
Thinking about things and deciding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If ...</th>
<th>you could ...</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>someone offered you money for your bike but you weren’t sure if you wanted to sell it or not</td>
<td>sleep on it; decide to take the money and do without the bike</td>
<td>wait until the next day before you decide what to do about it; manage without it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were offered a good job in a town far away from where you live</td>
<td>weigh up the pros and cons; run it by your parents or a good friend (informal)</td>
<td>think carefully about the advantages and disadvantages involved before making a decision; tell your parents or a good friend, so that they can give their opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were getting tired of paying rent to live in a flat</td>
<td>plan ahead and start saving money to buy a house; think ahead, and consider now you would like to live in 10 or 20 years from now</td>
<td>make decisions or plans about something you will do or might do in the future; think carefully about what might happen in the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone offered you the chance to invest all the money you’ve saved in a company they were starting</td>
<td>think it over and tell them your decision at a later date; think through the possible risks of giving all your savings away</td>
<td>think carefully about the idea before making a decision; think carefully about the risks and consider the possible consequences</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other verbs connected with planning and deciding

We should allow for possible delays on the motorway and leave an hour earlier. [consider or include something when making plans or judging a situation]

Having to pay extra for all our meals at the hotel was something we didn’t bargain for. [expect something to happen and be prepared for it]

I’m sure he’ll opt out of doing the bungee jump at the last minute. [choose not to do something you have planned]

I’m sure he’ll chicken out of doing the bungee jump at the last minute. [informal: decide not to do something you have planned because you are frightened]

I have so many things on in the evenings that it would be too much to be on the school committee too. [have arrangements to do things]

My wife seems to be completely set against moving to the country. [be opposed to]

I could do without having my family coming to stay this weekend. I just want a quiet weekend. [informal: something you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it]
Exercises

37.1 Complete this dialogue using verbs or particles from A.

Sarah: Do you think you're going to take that job in New York, Kenny?
Kenny: Well, I've been thinking it ____________ (1) and trying to ____________ (2) up all the positives and negatives, but I'm finding it really hard to come to a decision. I've run it ____________ (3) the family but they all have different views. My younger child is really keen on the idea but the older one isn't. My wife says we have to think ____________ (4) and imagine how things would be for the kids when they're a bit older.
Sarah: So how long do they give you to ____________ (5) through all the implications and come to a decision?
Kenny: Unfortunately, I have to make up my mind by next week.
Sarah: Well, why don't you ____________ (6) on it. Things might seem clearer in the morning.

37.2 Answer these questions about yourself, using full sentences.
1. When you have an important decision to make in your personal or your professional life who would you usually run it by first?
2. If you are worried about a situation at work, do you usually think it over immediately or decide to sleep on it first?
3. You have enough money for only one of these—a special holiday or a car. Which would you prefer to do without?
4. In what ways do people plan ahead for their retirement?
5. What sorts of things might people chicken out of doing?

37.3 Rewrite these sentences using the word in brackets, so that they keep the same meaning.
1. We should take into consideration the fact that he is still only young. (ALLOW)
2. I really can't help you as I have a lot of things to do today. (ON)
3. He wants to stop having art classes at school next year so he can do extra music. (OPT)
4. We didn't expect Mark to turn up at the party with a lot of his friends. (ARGUE)
5. My son is determined not to go to university. (SET)
6. I would really prefer if we didn't have people coming for dinner this evening. (WITHOUT)

37.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.
1. I was going to do the parachute jump but I chickened off in the end.
2. I have on a lot of things this weekend.
3. In judging her work, you should really allow her inexperience for.
4. If we buy the flat, we'll have to make without holidays for a few years.
5. Let's run our plan through Sarah before we make our final decision.
6. I could make without having to go to a conference this weekend.
7. In deciding how much holiday money we need, we should allow the fact that that food is very expensive there.
Disagreeing

Disagreement at work

There was an unceasing 1 at work today because the boss announced that he wanted us all to take a pay cut. We had a union meeting at lunchtime and we all agreed to stick together 2 and refuse to agree to his requests. Our union leader spoke out 3 very clearly to our boss and to the local press this afternoon. We’re sure that the boss will have to give in 4 in the end. Although in some ways I’d rather stay out of 5 it myself, I have no choice but to support my fellow union members.

1 (noun) public expression of anger and disapproval  
2 support each other, especially in a difficult situation  
3 publicly expressed an opinion, usually to oppose 4 or criticise something or someone  
4 finally agree to what someone wants after a period of refusing to agree  
5 not become involved in an argument or discussion

Private disagreements

Read Cilla’s letter to an agony aunt, Esther.

Dear Esther,  
Please can you help me. My big sister and I always used to be good friends, but we fell out 1 when I started going out with a new boyfriend. Now she is always trying to put me down 2 and it is really beginning to get to 3 me. My boyfriend usually tries to stick up for 4 me, but then she just laughs at him too. Two years ago my boyfriend used to go out with my sister, but surely she doesn’t hold this against 5 us? What can we do?  
Cilla

1 argued with each other and stopped being friends  
2 make me feel stupid or unimportant by criticising me  
3 make me feel upset or angry  
4 defend me when I am being criticised  
5 like or respect them less because they have done something wrong or something that she does not like

Back

The verb back  is often used to refer to the position you take in an argument or decision.

BACK

up sh (or back sb up) 2 to say that someone is telling the truth  

up = admit that you are wrong or have been defeated, often because you are forced to  

out = decide not to do something that you were going to do or had agreed to do

Examples:
When I make my point at the meeting, please back me up.

The government backed down on its controversial plans to increase income tax.
Jill had agreed to come sailing with us tomorrow, but she’s backed out.

80 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
38.1 In this radio interview a protester is angry about a plan to build a new road through some beautiful woodland. Complete the interview using verbs from the opposite page.

Reporter: Now, Mr Humfray, you have .................. (1) out recently against the new road plan. Do you think your protest campaign can change the decision?

Protester: Well, there are a number of different groups opposed to this plan, and if we .................. (2) together we can force the authorities to rethink.

Reporter: But do you really think the authorities will be prepared to .................. (3) down over this? The Minister has said the road plan must go ahead.

Protester: This isn't a small protest. There's been a massive public .................. (4). People are not willing to see their environment destroyed by road building. The Highways Department must listen to us or face the consequences.

Reporter: The consequences? Do you mean violent protest as with the Knox Bridge?

Protester: Not violent protest, no. We have always emphasised to our members that if violence erupts they should .................. (5) out of it and keep our protest peaceful. We condemn violence. No, I'm talking about a huge, non-violent wave of protest.

Reporter: And you think that, in this way, the government will be forced to .................. (6) in?

Protester: Yes, I believe they will simply have to listen.

38.2 Use a phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete these dialogues, so that Speaker B agrees with Speaker A's statement.

1 A: Apparently, Gary agreed with Liam's version of the events.
B: Yes, he ..................
2 A: I hear Kim and Francis have had a serious argument.
B: Yes, it seems they've ..................
3 A: Peerz always defends Ms when people criticise her.
B: Yes, she ..................
4 A: I think we should withdraw from the project.
B: Yes, I agree. I think we ..................
5 A: Jo is always criticising Phil and making him look small.
B: Yes, she's always ..................
6 A: We shouldn't feel negative towards Iris just because she acted stupidly.
B: No, we shouldn't ..................
7 A: I think not getting the job is really beginning to upset Trisha.
B: Yes, I think it's really ..................

38.3 Complete these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 Harry says he won't come to the fancy dress party with me but I'm sure he'll eventually ..................
2 Why have Jaya and Sarah .................. ? They used to get on so well together.
3 I just don't have enough money for the holiday we were planning in Canada. I'm going to have to ..................
4 My best friend and I have always .................. , through good times and bad times.
5 The boss's constant criticisms are really .................. me and I'm going to start looking for another job.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 81
### Persuading

**Verbs with talk and put**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If you ...</th>
<th>then you ...</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put across/over sth or put sth across/over</td>
<td>explain or express something clearly so that people understand it easily</td>
<td>He's an excellent speaker. He puts his subject across/over so well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put forward sth or put sth forward</td>
<td>state an idea or opinion, or suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed</td>
<td>The company has put forward a plan to build a new hotel in the city centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth to sb</td>
<td>suggest an idea or plan to someone so they can consider or discuss it</td>
<td>Your proposal is interesting. I'll put it to the committee tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk sth around/round</td>
<td>persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do</td>
<td>Dad won't let me go away with my friends, but Mum might be able to talk him around/round.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk sth into sth doing sth</td>
<td>persuade someone to do something which they may be unwilling to do at first</td>
<td>She talked me into going jogging every day before work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk sth out of sth doing sth</td>
<td>persuade someone not to do something</td>
<td>My sister wants to leave college but my parents are trying to talk her out of it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other verbs connected with persuading people

**Prime Minister calls for war on drugs**

Minister brushes aside opposition to new tax plan

**Union boss brings employer round** to pay deal

Doctors press for shorter working hours

**City ropes in local industry to support environment plan**

"I was just having the media on", and they felt for it," says star who faked his own death

---

1. says he thinks a particular thing should be done, usually in order to change or improve a situation
2. refuses to listen to what someone says, or refuses to think about something seriously
3. persuades someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do
4. try to persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen
5. (informal) persuades someone to help you with something, especially when they do not want to
6. (informal) persuading someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke
7. were tricked into behaving something that is not true
Exercises

39.1 Choose the correct particle to complete each sentence.
1. The minister put the new proposal __________ the Prime Minister.
   a) forward  b) to  c) across/over

2. I was hoping to leave at 4 a.m., but my parents talked me __________ it.
   a) into  b) round  c) out of

3. Have you managed to talk your dad ___________ lending you the money to buy a car yet?
   a) into  b) round  c) out of

4. The new manager has some interesting new proposals that he wants to put ___________ at the staff meeting tomorrow.
   a) forward  b) to  c) across/over

5. The lecturer was no good at putting his ideas ___________ and I found it impossible to follow his talk.
   a) forward  b) to  c) across/over

6. My husband doesn’t want to go skiing but I think I’ll be able to talk him ___________.
   a) into  b) around/round  c) out of

39.2 Write the phrasal verbs presented on the opposite page into one of these categories.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Presenting an opinion or trying to persuade</th>
<th>Successfully persuading</th>
<th>People’s reactions to persuasion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39.3 Read the sentences below and answer the questions about them.
1. The headmistress brushes aside the parents’ criticism that the children were being given too much homework.
   How did she take the parents’ criticism?

2. Brenda was just having Derek on when she said she was going to work in the USA.
   Where is Brenda going to work?

3. The parents were roped in to help organise the school sports’ day.
   Did the parents decide that they wanted to help organise the sports’ day?

4. Harry fell for Sarah’s story that all her money had been stolen.
   What do we learn about Sarah?

5. The Party is calling for constitutional reform.
   Does the Party want constitutional reform or not?

39.4 Complete the text using phrasal verbs from the opposite page. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

If you’re a politician __________________ (1) change, you’re trying to __________________ opponents __________________ (2) to your way of thinking. You will probably try to do this by __________________ (3) your plans as clearly as possible and you’ll also try to use the media to __________________ (4) the changes that you want. Indeed, you will __________________ (5) all the supporters you can find to help you others __________________ (6) voting for your proposals.
Praising and criticising

Max: Now that you’ve been in our company for a month, what do you think of the other people in your department?
David: Well, there is one outstanding 1 person and that’s Jessica. She’s a first-class personal assistant. She stands out 2 from the others.

Max: That’s good to hear. What about Rick? What do you think of him?
David: He’s very able, but I wish he wasn’t such a show-off 3! I don’t know who he’s trying to impress.

Max: It’s the female staff, I think. He always shows off 4 more with women around.
David: Yes, I guess he’s just a bit screwed-up 5. But otherwise his performance is fine – his work certainly measures up 6.

Max: So there are no real problems then?
David: Well, I am very worried about Sally. She seems to be screwing everything up 7 at the moment. I’d had such good reports of her that it really surprised me. I tried asking her what she was playing at 8 but she just burst into tears.

Max: Why don’t you have a word with Jessica? Perhaps she can find out what’s wrong.

1 (adjective) extremely good, or of a very high standard
2 (noun) person who tries to impress in an annoying way
3 (noun) person who tries to impress in an annoying way
4 (adjective, informal) confused, unhappy about himself and his life
5 (adjective, informal) confusing, unhappy about himself and his life
6 (adjective, informal) confusing, unhappy about himself and his life
7 (informal) making a mistake with everything, or damaging or spoiling everything
8 (always used in the continuous form; always used in questions) doing; when you ask what someone is playing at, you are surprised or angry about their behaviour

Ways of criticising

If you lay into someone, you criticise or attack them in an angry way.
The headmaster really laid into the boys for arriving in school so late.

If you pick on someone, you choose one person from a group of people to criticise or treat unfairly, especially when they are smaller or weaker than you.
Mark was a quiet, studious child and the big boys in the class used to pick on him.

If you run down someone or something, or run someone or something down, you criticise that person or thing, often unfairly.
Pat’s big sister is always running her down even though Pat is far cleverer than her.

If you hit back, you criticise or attack someone who has criticised or attacked you.
Jack is constantly criticising his son – I’m sure they’ll hit back eventually.

If you take out something on someone or take something out on someone, you treat someone badly because you are upset or angry, even though they have done nothing wrong.
Of course Mary is upset at losing her job but she shouldn’t take it out on her family.

If you rub something in (informal), you talk to someone about something which they want to forget because they feel bad about it.
I know it was all my fault. I just wish everyone would stop rubbing it in!
40.1 In the dialogue in A opposite there are three phrasal verbs which have related noun or adjective forms. Write down the phrasal verbs and their related forms and explain the connection between them.

40.2 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

1. Who felt that someone was rubbing it in?
2. Who felt that someone was always running them down?
3. Who felt that they had to hit back?
4. Who felt someone had picked on them?
5. Who felt that people were taking it out on them?
6. Who felt that someone laid into them?

40.3 Rewrite each sentence using the word in brackets.
1. Dan won the prize as his short story was clearly (best).
2. Molly got the sack because her work just wasn’t good enough. (measure)
3. What on earth does Gemma think she’s doing – she’s behaving so oddly? (play)
4. I wish Ed wouldn’t try to impress all the time! (show)
5. If you make such a stupid mistake again, you’ll lose your job. (screw)
6. I know I was stupid but please don’t remind me. (rub)
7. Joe’s father spoke very angrily to him for scratching his new car. (lay)
8. Why does everyone always blame me for everything? (pick)
Exclamations and warnings

The exclamations and warnings on this page are all typical of informal, spoken English.

A  Reactions and responses

Ahmed: I just wanted to ask you a couple of questions.
Sara: Fine. No problem. Fire away! [something you say to tell someone you’re ready for them to start asking you questions, or to start speaking]

Hilary: Oh, everything is so awful at the moment.
Peta: Oh, lighten up, will you? You’ll make everyone as miserable as you are! [something you say to tell someone to stop being so serious or annoyed]

Vera: Joanna wants you to give a talk to her students next Monday.
Dan: Joanna? Next week? Hang on / hold on! Who’s Joanna? Is she someone I know? [something you say when you are confused or surprised by something and you need time to think]

Kyle: I feel like killing Roger! I’m never, ever going to speak to him again!
Lorna: Steady on! I know he acted stupidly, but he’s not a bad person really. [something you say to tell someone that you think what they are saying is too extreme]

Gary: You see, what I want to say is, well, I mean, it’s like, er, it’s difficult to say it.
Ken: Come on! Spit it out! What is it? [come on something you say to encourage someone to do something you want them to do, especially to hurry up, to try harder, or to tell you something; spit it out something you say to encourage someone to tell you something which they do not want to tell you]

Lou: Some of the students are very poor, and can’t afford textbooks.
Kate: Poor! Come off it! They have enough money for mobile phones. [something you say to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them]

B  Commands and warnings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step on it! We’re late.</td>
<td>said to someone, especially someone who is driving, when you want them to go faster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watch out! / Mind out! / Look out!</td>
<td>said to tell someone to be careful so that they can avoid danger or an accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s a car coming!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go on! / Hurry up! We’ve not got all day!</td>
<td>said to encourage someone to do something or to tell someone to do something more quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’re doing very well! Keep it up!</td>
<td>said to encourage someone to continue to do something, especially to continue to work hard or well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[On the phone] Hold on, I’ll get Mike for you. It’s best if you speak to him.</td>
<td>said to ask someone to wait a moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belt up! I’m trying to listen to the radio.</td>
<td>said angrily to someone to tell them to be quiet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many of the exclamations here are very direct and may be considered impolite if you say them to someone you don’t know very well. Learn them so that you understand them when you hear or read them, but use them only with very great care.
41.1 Divide the exclamations and warnings on the opposite page into these groups:
a) those that you could use to your boss or teacher  
b) those that you could only use to close friends

41.2 Choose the best response from those in the box to fit each of these dialogues.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Come off it!</th>
<th>Lighten up!</th>
<th>Steady on!</th>
<th>Mind out!</th>
<th>Hold on!</th>
<th>Come on! Spit it out!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Bart: What's the matter with you?  
Candy: There's something I've got to tell you but, well, I don't know where to begin.  
Bart: -------------------------- I haven't got all day. |
| Paul: I'm sorry, I just haven't had time to finish my essay. It's taken me ages to get hold of the books I needed for it.  
Teacher: -------------------------- There are plenty of copies in the library. And you could have told me sooner if you had really been having problems. |
| Tanya: Can I speak to your sister, please?  
Matt: -------------------------- I'll just go and see if she's in yet. |
| Bella: I'm never going to get all this work done. I hate my job.  
Sonya: -------------------------- It won't take long if you hurry up a bit. |
| Anna: Look at the picture on the side of that lorry!  
Tom: -------------------------- You're going to hit the car in front of you! |
| Patt: That was a stupid thing to do. You're fired!  
Mark: -------------------------- You know I'm one of your best workers. |
| Jim: Now I've been in the office for a month, I'd like to know if you are pleased with my work. How am I doing?  
Rob: Very well! -------------------------- You'll soon be getting a promotion. |

41.3 Answer the following questions,

1. Which exclamation on the opposite page is connected with the idea of shooting a gun?  
2. Which exclamation is connected with the idea of pressing your foot down on the accelerator pedal of a car?  
3. Which exclamation is connected with the idea of forcing out the liquid in your mouth?

41.4 Divide the exclamations from the box below into pairs that have approximately the same meaning. What is the basic meaning for each pair? Describe a situation when each pair of expressions might be used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wash out!</th>
<th>Hold on!</th>
<th>Mind out!</th>
<th>Hurry up!</th>
<th>Step on it!</th>
<th>Hang on!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 87
The classroom and learning

Things the teacher says
With all the verbs in these examples, the particle can either go before or after the object, e.g. give in your homework or give your homework in.

*Sheets of paper that everyone in a class or lecture receives a copy of are called handouts. These might be worksheets (i.e. have exercises on them) or they might contain a text or some reference material.

Other classroom phrasal verbs
Tamara was ill for a month and so she fell behind with her schoolwork. [failed to do her schoolwork by a particular time] She is going to find it difficult to catch up. [reach the same standard as the rest of the class]

Pupils often play up when a teacher is new or inexperienced. [behave badly]

Although Maggie had done good work throughout the year she messed up her exam. [did her exam badly]

The teacher cleared the books from the table and spread out the map. [opened out something that was folded]
Exercises

42.1 Look at these pictures and write a sentence to describe what the student is doing in each case.

1. [Picture of a student looking at a book]
2. [Picture of a student answering a question]
3. [Picture of a student working in a group]
4. [Picture of a student listening to someone speaking]
5. [Picture of a student looking at a clock]

42.2 Would Tim's parents be pleased or not if their son's teacher told them the following?

1. Tim was playing up in class last week.
2. Tim messed up his homework.
3. Tim has been helping a classmate who has fallen behind.
4. Tim has caught up with the rest of the class.
5. Tim didn't hand in his homework.
6. Tim missed out some important work.

42.3 Complete this story, using appropriate phrasal verbs from the opposite page. Write the verbs in the correct tense.

Last term Cath missed three weeks of school and so she ________________ (1) with her studies. She did all she could to try to ________________ (2) with the other students but she couldn't manage. When it came to the maths test at the end of term she just couldn't ________________ (3) the answers. She spent all her time on half of the question paper and ________________ (4) the other half, so inevitably she failed. Because she had ________________ (5) the test, her parents decided she'd better have a maths tutor over the holidays. In this week's test she came top of the class.

42.4 Rewrite these sentences using more informal phrasal verbs instead of the underlined verbs.

1. Students often misbehave when they are bored in class.
2. The teacher erased the new work from the board and then tested us.
3. We have to submit our registration forms for the exam on Friday.
4. I usually omit my middle name when I am filling in forms.
5. Some people were distributing leaflets about a demonstration in the town centre.

42.5 Answer these questions using full sentences.

1. Why are you often asked to cross out rough work in an exam?
2. If a teacher gives out a sheet listing all the kings and queens of Britain, is that a worksheet or a handout or both?
3. Why do most pupils carry an eraser in their pencil cases?
4. How easy would it be for you to work out how many euros are equal to 250 US dollars?
5. What do you think is the reason for pupils playing up in class?
Student life: courses and exams

Enrolling on courses
Look at this information leaflet for students at Welney College. Then look at how David explains the system informally to a friend, using phrasal verbs. The numbers (1, 2, etc.) help you to match the phrasal verbs with their meanings.

David:
- We break up1 on 18 December and go back2 on 8 January, so we’ve got about a three-week break.
- But we’ve got to sign up3 for courses for next term before 12 December.
- You have to go to all the lectures; if you drop out4 before the end, you don’t get the credits.
- And you have to write up5 your course essay and submit it a week before the course ends.
- If you fail 30% or more of your courses, they throw you out6 of the college.

Before an exam

Six tips for exam success

- Keep your reading up1 during the term so that you have less to read just before the exam.
- Brush up on2 some of the things you learnt a long time ago; they may possibly come up3 in the exam.
- Don’t just mug up4 on the key points you need for the exam and hope that you’ll escape through5 with little effort.
- On the other hand, don’t try to do everything. Swotting up6 on everything you have done all term means you will have to revise a lot of useless things too.
- Concentrate on polishing up7 the most important areas and your best skills.
- Don’t fool yourself that you’ll pass the exam on the basis of what you’ve picked up8 during the lectures and classes. You will need to revise!

1. continue to do something
2. practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something, usually something you learned in the past but have partly forgotten
3. if a question or a subject comes up in an exam, that question is asked or questions about that subject are asked in the exam
4. (informal) quickly try to learn the main facts about a subject, especially before an exam (often + on)
5. manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something
6. (informal) learning as much as you can about something, especially before an exam (often + on)
7. practising, and improving your skills or your knowledge of something
8. learnt by absorbing it rather than studying it
Exercises

43.1 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets, so that they keep the same meaning.
1 I'm going to register for a course in statistics next year. (sign)
2 Several students did not complete the Moral Philosophy course. (drop)
3 Our course finishes on 20 June. (break)
4 He was forced to leave university after one term. He'd done no work at all. (throw)
5 I can't come out tonight. I have to have my essay finished for tomorrow. (write)
6 My next term at college starts on 12 September. (go)

43.2 Which of these would make most students happy and why?
breaking up  dropping out  being thrown out  scraping through  mugging up  swotting up

43.3 Choose the best phrasal verb from the opposite page to complete this letter.

Dear Auntie Mag,

All last my first year exams are over. It's such a relief. I feel so as if I've done nothing but 1. (them) for ages. Although I'd 2. work quite well during the year, I still needed to 3. (that) everything that we had covered, of course. Fortunately, everything that I hoped would 4. (the) exam paper did.

So I hope I've done OK and haven't just 5. (that). Now all I have to do is 6. (that) one course assignment, which I need to hand in by the end of term.

We don't 7. (that) until the end of the month and so I won't be home until then. We don't 8. (that) until the end of September, so it'll be a lonely long break. I look forward to seeing you soon.

Love,
Suzanne

Cambridge, 20 June

43.4 Correct the ten phrasal verb mistakes in this paragraph. Either the wrong particles or the wrong verbs have been used.

Dick hardly worked up at all for his exams. He brushed over the history of the French Revolution, but no questions on the French Revolution got up in the exam. He was afraid that he would be thrown off university for failing his exams. However, he did just manage to scratch through them and so he will be in college when we return back next term. He has promised to try to keep through with work next year as he is planning to sign in for a couple of quite difficult courses, including business studies. He'll have to polish over his French because the business studies course involves spending a term in France working in a business. He thinks he can just lift up the language when he gets there, but I think he should study it before he goes because he only has school French.

Go to the Mini-dictionary at the end of this book and find more phrasal verbs with break. Is there a common theme in their meaning? If so, what is it?
**Student life: reading and writing**

### Reading

1. read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it
2. read small parts of a book or magazine

### Writing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>write out sth or</td>
<td>write something again in a better or more complete way</td>
<td>Do your essay in rough first and then write it out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write sth out</td>
<td>write something on a document, e.g. a cheque or a prescription, so that it can be used</td>
<td>The doctor wrote out a prescription for some sleeping tablets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note down sth or</td>
<td>write words or numbers, often so that you do not forget them</td>
<td>Note down your password somewhere safe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note sth down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jot down sth or</td>
<td>write something quickly on a piece of paper so that you remember it</td>
<td>Jack jotted down Sue’s address on a scrap of paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jot sth down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribble down sth or</td>
<td>write something very quickly on a piece of paper</td>
<td>The lecturer spoke so fast that I could only scribble down a few notes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribble sth down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make out sth or</td>
<td>write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a cheque, an application, a ticket</td>
<td>If you have time to wait, we could make out your airline ticket now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sth out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill in sth or fill</td>
<td>write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a form</td>
<td>Please fill in this registration form and return it by 18 September.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sth in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill sth out</td>
<td>write all the necessary information on an official document, e.g. a form</td>
<td>Let’s fill out this questionnaire together.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Improving a piece of writing

**Dad:** Your essay’s good but I think it would be better if you cut out this paragraph here. Also it’d be a good idea to add a paragraph summarising your main points at the end. This paragraph here is a bit strong – why not tone it down a bit? And your point about crime cropping up in several places – why not deal with it in just one paragraph? And you only touch on the issue of government control. Surely that deserves a bit more space? In fact I really think you should try to set the whole thing out better!

**Son:** Why don’t you just write it then, Dad?

---

1. removed
2. describing briefly the most important points
3. make it less critical or offensive
4. appears
5. mention briefly (also touch upon)
6. give all the details or explain clearly, especially in writing

---

92 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Exercises

44.1 Match the verbs on the left with an object from the right. There may be more than one answer.

1. scribble down  a) a subject
2. make out  b) a book or an article
3. fill in  c) the page
4. put down  d) a rough draft of an essay
5. note down  e) the times of the trains to London
6. write out  f) the answer you have written
7. read up on  g) a form or questionnaire
8. dip into  h) a few very quick moves
9. read out  i) someone’s phone number on a piece of paper
10. turn over  j) a cheque for £250

44.2 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 44.1 to complete these sentences. Write the verbs in the correct form. There may be more than one possible answer.

1. I get nervous when I have to __________________________, what I’ve written in class.
2. I haven’t read the book in detail. I just __________________________ it.
3. The police officer just managed to quickly __________________________ the registration number of the car before it drove away at high speed.
4. I’ve made some notes for my speech; now I’m going to __________________________ in full.
5. Could you __________________________ the cheque to ‘Wilton and Co.’ please?
6. There are three forms to __________________________ for this visa application, (two answers)
7. We should __________________________ the departure times for flights to Rio de Janeiro.
8. I’ll have to __________________________ international law for the exam.
9. Now __________________________ and let’s see what’s on the next page.
10. Hang on, I’ll just __________________________ your address in case I forget it.

44.3 Look at this student essay, and the teacher’s comments in the margin. Then complete what the teacher might say to the student using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

The problems of pollution in the world cannot be solved overnight, since smoke from factories is a necessary evil, and cars and planes will always be noisy. Cleaning the environment is expensive.

Jumbo jets make more pollution and noise than other planes.[i] People’s health is affected.[ii] Governments are completely stupid on questions of the environment.[iii]

It is very expensive to improve the environment.[iv]

...[v]

[i] Delete this sentence.
[ii] You only mention that smoke badly, but it’s an important issue.
[iii] This is the strong point but already appeared once in your essay.
[iv] Summarizing needed.
[v] I’ve put a line through this sentence; you should have written more. Also you should (1) the question of health; you should have written more. Also you should (2) what you say about governments; it’s too strong. Then this last point has already (3) once; you don’t need to repeat it. And finally, the essay ends too suddenly. You should (4) (5) your arguments.
Work: jobs and career

Talking informally about your work or career

Well, to get ahead in a job like mine you have to be prepared to take on a lot of responsibility and work long hours.

When the boss first took me on he filled me in on what the job involved, but he didn’t tell me I would have to do so much travelling!

Well, I stood down as Chairman in 1998, and Mary Wilmott took over.

As you all know, she has carried out some important reforms in the company and has been very successful.

I’m 60 now, so I think it’s time for me to step down and hand over to a younger person.

1 be successful in your job
2 accept a particular job or responsibility
3 began to employ me
4 gave me the information I needed in order to do something
5 left an important job or official position so that someone else can do it instead
6 started doing a job or being responsible for something that someone else was doing or was responsible for before you
7 done or completed something, especially something important
8 leave your job, especially so that someone else can do it
9 give someone else responsibility or control

More work-related phrasal verbs

Ellen: Frances, do you think you could fix up a staff meeting for me? [provide or arrange something for someone]
Frances: Yes, I’ll do that. When were you thinking of?
Ellen: Well, let’s pencil it in for Friday morning and see whether everyone else is free then. [arrange for something to happen on a particular date, knowing the arrangement might be changed later]

Keith: Why are you back home already? Did you knock off early today? [informal: stop working, usually at the end of a day]
Bob: I wish I could say that. The truth is I’ve just been laid off. [lost your job because there is no work for you to do, from the verb lay off someone]
Keith: Oh, I’m sorry to hear that.

Veronica: Did you ever follow up that phone call you had with the oil company? [do something in order to make the effect of an earlier action or thing stronger or more certain]
Jim: No, I really should do something about it.

Mona: It’s amazing how much we can get done when we all pull together, isn’t it? [work as a group in order to achieve something]
Ricky: Yes, although sometimes it’s also good if people just leave you to it. [informal: go away from someone so that they do something by themselves or so they can continue what they are doing]
45.1 Write down phrasal verbs from the opposite page which are:
   a) connected with finishing work (four answers)
   b) connected with making arrangements (two answers)

45.2 Complete this text, using verbs or particles from the opposite page.

Jill has been ____________ (1) on more and more responsibility at work. She was only taken
___________ (2) two years ago but she has already managed to ____________ (3) out a very successful
reorganisation of office procedures. Her boss just ____________ (4) her to it and Jill then filled him
___________ (5) when she had arranged everything.
She has always been very good at getting people to
___________ (6) together and at motivating them. She’s
someone who will really get ____________ (7) and make a successful career. In fact
I’m sure that when the boss eventually ____________ (8) down, he’ll ____________ (9)
over the running of the company to her. He can be sure it will be in safe hands!

45.3 Write suitable answers to the questions below, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
1. Shall I tell you what’s been going on while you were on holiday?
   Yes, please ____________________________
2. Could you deal with the letters we’ve had in response to our advert?
   Certainly, I’ll ____________________________
3. Could you arrange an appointment for me with the bank manager?
   Yes, I’ll ____________________________
4. Why did you stand down as Director?
   Well, I’ve been doing it for years and I thought it was time to ____________________________
5. Can we arrange a meeting for some time next week?
   Sure, why don’t we ____________________________

45.4 Answer these questions about your own working life, using full sentences.
1. What kind of tasks do you have to carry out each day?
2. At what time do you knock off each day?
3. Do you know anyone who has ever been laid off?
4. What qualities do you think you need to get ahead in the job that you do?
5. What did you do to get taken on for the job that you now have?
Being busy

Nick: I haven't seen you for ages. Have you been a bit tied up1 at work?
Tim: Yes, I've been incredibly busy. I was away for a conference and the work just piled up2 while I was away. I've been snowed under3 ever since. Although I slave away4 till seven at night and even work at weekends, I still can't seem to catch up with5 everything!

Nick: Sorry, I asked!

1 been so busy that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere (informal)
2 became more and more (used of something unpleasant, e.g. work, bills or debts)
3 had so much work to do that I have problems dealing with it
4 work very hard with little or no rest
5 do something you did not have time to do earlier

Working hard

Ray: How are things going for you at work at the moment, Stella?
Stella: Well, we're branching out1 into a new product line - children's clothes - so I'm pretty busy. At the moment I'm working on1 some new designs for loungewear. We're working towards2 having a complete range for children of all ages. It's quite difficult but I'm sure I'll develop some good designs if I keep at3 it.

Ray: Well, you always were good at sticking at4 things.
Stella: Well, I'd certainly rather do a project myself than have to chase up5 other people to make sure they're doing what they promised to do. But sometimes you have to do that just to keep things moving along6.

Ray: Do you think you could squeeze in7 lunch with me sometime?
Stella: Mrs, possibly, but not till next week.

Ray: That's fine. But don't try to wriggle out8 it at the last minute!

1 starting to do something different from what you usually do
2 spending time working in order to produce something
3 trying hard to achieve
4 continue working hard at something difficult or something which takes a long time
5 continuing to work hard at something even though it is hard or takes a long time
6 ask people to do something that they said they would do but have not done yet
7 developing in a satisfactory way
8 manage to see someone or do something when you are very busy and do not have much time available
9 avoid doing something that other people think you should do, often in a dishonest way (informal)

Mr Benbow stuck at his job in the glue factory for 25 years before retiring.

When phrasal verbs have very strong visual images associated with the verbs they are made from, for example squeeze in, stick at and wriggle out, try to picture the meaning of the verb alone to help you remember the meaning of the verb and particle together.
46.1 Which phrasal verbs in A opposite do these pictures make you think of? Write the correct phrasal verb under each one.

1

2

3

4

46.2 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 46.1 to rewrite these sentences. Use each phrasal verb once only.
1. I've been working incredibly hard in a restaurant to pay for my studies.
2. Sorry, I was incredibly busy all last week, so I couldn't go to any of the meetings.
3. Paperwork has just increased and increased recently. I don't know where to start.
4. I'm sorry I can't do the report this week. I'm just so terribly busy.

46.3 Complete these sentences using the correct particles.
1. I've been working all day ____________ this essay and I still haven't finished it.
2. Whenever there's a difficult task to do she always tries to wriggle ____________ it.
3. Why should we slave ____________ till we're 65 and get nothing but a small pension?
4. Could we squeeze ____________ a quick meeting before lunch?
5. I must catch ____________ housework before my visitors arrive this weekend.

46.4 Each line of the text below contains one mistake with a phrasal verb. Cross out the incorrect word and write the correct word in the box next to that line.

I need to chase out Gerald's report so that we can keep things moving away with the European sales campaign. I know he's been working in it and I know he's been working upwards the same goals as all of us to branch up into new markets in Europe, but he's not good at sticking for things and you need to keep in it with campaigns like this one.
Money: salaries, bills, payments

A Formal and informal
Many phrasal verbs have more formal, non-phrasal equivalents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>more formal equivalent</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take out sth or</td>
<td>withdraw</td>
<td>get money from a bank</td>
<td>I took £100 out at the ATM yesterday. You may not withdraw more than £500 in 24 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut back sth or</td>
<td>reduce</td>
<td>decrease the amount of money that is being spent on something</td>
<td>The government is cutting back on the education budget. The education budget is to be reduced next year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut sth back</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay back sth/sh or</td>
<td>repay</td>
<td>pay someone the money that you owe them</td>
<td>Lend me ten pounds and I’ll pay you back tomorrow. Poor countries find it very difficult to repay their debts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay sth/sh back</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to sth</td>
<td>total</td>
<td>be a particular total when amounts or numbers are added together</td>
<td>The bill for the meal came to $86 all together. Healthcare expenditure totalled $120 billion last year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Paying bills and debts
I won’t pay off the mortgage on my house until 2024. (pay back all the money you owe)
My tax bill has arrived. I have to pay up by 30 December. (pay money that you owe, especially when you do not want to)
My kids ran up a phone bill of £400! (caused you to owe a large amount of money)
I know I already owe you £20. Can you lend me another 20 and I’ll settle up with you when I get paid next week. (pay someone the money that you owe them)

C Other verbs connected with money
I’ve been offered a chance to go to New Zealand next year. So I’ve started saving up already. I’m trying to set aside a fixed amount each month so that I’ll have enough.

1 keeping money so that I can buy something with it in the future
2 use money for one purpose and no other purpose
3 accept that an amount of money has been lost
4 it will not be returned
5 giving something to somebody without asking for payment
6 bought something when you have gone to a place to do something else
7 (adjective) very cheap
47.1 Rewrite these sentences, using the word in brackets so that they keep the same meaning.
1 The suspected criminal withdrew all the money from his bank account and has not been seen since.  **(take)**
2 As his girlfriend is in Australia, he has a huge phone bill every month.  **(run)**
3 The bill for the books we ordered totalled $40.85.  **(come)**
4 I lent him €100 a year ago and he still hasn’t repaid me.  **(pay)**
5 Now that I’ve lost my job we’re going to have to reduce what we spend on our weekly trip to the supermarket.  **(cut)**
6 If you pay the restaurant bill with your credit card, I’ll give you my share later.  **(settle)**

47.2 Complete this e-mail using words from the box.

aside  back  down  off  up

Hi Marc,

I’ve got some exciting news. At last I’ve saved ………….. (1) enough money to come and visit you in Canada. What’s more, my parents have agreed to write ………….. (2) the money I borrowed from them when I was at university. They think they will get it ………….. (3) one day when I’m rich and famous! Anyway, I’ve been setting ………….. (4) money for the trip all year and at last I can afford it. I’ve heard you can get tickets at knock ………….. (5) prices on the Internet so I’ll try and do that.

Looking forward so much to seeing you soon,

Jane

47.3 Choose the correct word from a–d to complete the text below.

My financial situation is in a bit of a bad way at the moment. First of all I owe my brother some money and he says I have to pay ………….. (1) before the end of the month, I’ve ………….. (2) up so many other bills that I don’t know how I’m going to pay them ………….. (3). I wanted to sell my car, but it’s so old and rusty that I can’t even ………….. (4) it away. At work they’re threatening to ………….. (5) our back opportunities for overtime. I don’t know what I’ll do then.

1 a) back  b) up  c) off  d) out
2 a) cut  b) saved  c) run  d) picked
3 a) back  b) up  c) off  d) out
4 a) give  b) settle  c) take  d) write
5 a) pay  b) knock  c) set  d) cut

47.4 Answer these questions, using full sentences.
1 What, if anything, are you saving up for?
2 How much money do you usually take out at a cash machine?
3 What would you expect the bill for a night in a hotel in your country to come to?
4 Do you have any big debts and, if so, when do you hope to pay them off?
5 What sorts of things might you pick up at a flea market?
Money: buying and selling

A Shopping and buying goods

Tom: That leather bag's £120. Shall I see if he'll sell it cheaper?

Lily: Yes, why don't you try and beat him down to £100.

Jill: Did you manage to get that car you wanted for a lower price?

Sandy: Yes, the dealer knocked 10% off the price because I offered to pay cash.

Nora: This is a nice old vase. Is it an antique?

Beryl: Yes it is, but I picked it up for £30. It was a real bargain.

Fran: It would be nice to buy something for our teacher now that the course is ending.

Paco: Yes, we should club together and get her some flowers or a nice gift.

Larry: I'm not going to buy stuff at those gift shops again. They really ripped me off last time.

[Slang: cheated me by making me pay too much]

Sue: Yes, a lot of those tourist shops are a real rip-off. You can get the same things in ordinary shops for half the price.

[Misc. noun: from the verb rip off]

Martin: Shall we buy the TV set here? It's a big store.

Pilar: No, let's shop around a bit. They may be cheaper somewhere else.

[Average verb: look at different shops and compare prices]

Aaron: Mick is selling Madonna's autograph for $20. Should I buy it?

Ritchie: If I were you I'd snap it up. It could become very valuable in the future.

[Slightly slang: buy it quickly because the price is good]

Meg: The car failed its annual test yesterday. Two of the tyres are badly worn.

Simon: Oh no! Now we have to fork out for two new ones!

[Slang: pay for something, especially when you do not want to]

B Other buying verbs

Learn these verbs in pairs to help you remember them.

We should stock up on fruit and vegetables and not buy so much junk food. [buy large quantities of]

We should never skimp on healthy foods. [spend too little money on or use too little of]

We splashed out [spent a lot of money on something we didn't really need] on lots of new furniture last month and ran up [caused ourselves to have to pay] a huge bill.

They're selling off printers at half price at the computer store. [selling to get rid of them]

Shall we go and look at them right away in case they sell out? [have none left]

Sometimes you meet pairs of phrasal verbs which you can link together into one sentence or a pair of connected sentences, as in section B on this page. Try to learn as many pairs of phrasal verbs in this way because it will help you to remember them more easily.
48.1 Fill the gaps with appropriate verbs from the opposite page.

1. He wanted $2000 for his old car but I managed to _____________ him down to $1800.
2. We’re going to have to ________________ out a lot of money this year; the kitchen needs a new floor and the roof needs to be repaired.
3. We mustn’t ________________ on the food and drink for the party. We don’t want our friends to think we’re poor!
4. I ________________ up a nice old book about my village in a second-hand bookshop. It was only two pounds.
5. The tickets for the rock concert are bound to ________________ out really quickly. I think we should go to the box office first thing in the morning.

48.2 Answer the questions below using phrasal verbs from the box.

- splash out (on sth)
- club together
- stock up (on sth)
- knock off
- shop around

1. Most shops will be closing for about five days over the public holiday. What can you do to make sure you have enough food in the house?
2. Your sofa and armchairs are beginning to look very old. You have some money you’d like to spend. What could you do?
3. You want to buy your friend’s bicycle but you think the price is too high. What could you ask your friend to do?
4. You want to buy a DVD player, but the prices seem to be very different for the same model in different shops. What should you do?
5. Your classmate Sara is ill in hospital and you think it would be nice to send her a bunch of flowers from the whole class. What could you suggest?

48.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1. She became an Internet addict and ran into a huge telephone bill.
2. We were ripped off in that restaurant. They charged us for for our desserts when we only had two.
3. He sold over his share in the business and went travelling round the world.
4. When he offered me his tennis racket for only $10 I snapped it off because it was still in excellent condition.
5. We had to fork for a new washing machine because our old one broke down.

48.4 Answer these questions about nouns formed from phrasal verbs. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- skimp on
- pick up
- sell off
- sell out

1. On the opposite page, you are shown the noun form of one of the phrasal verbs. Which one is it?
2. Look at the box below. Which of these phrasal verbs from the opposite page also have noun forms, and if so, what do the noun forms mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.
Starting and doing business

Tim Benson started up his own business in his first year at university. He set up a small company hiring out bicycles to other students. He was very successful and claims that his profits ran into thousands of euros a month, a lot of money for a student. As a spin-off he used to sell cycling clothes and equipment to the students and that also was a good earner for him. "I was really happy with that set-up," says Tim, "as I loved cycling myself."

Ups and downs in business

Read this conversation about Ken’s business activities.

Bob: Doesn’t Ken own his computer business any more?
Rita: No, he sold up and used the money to buy a small chain of clothing outlets.
Bob: Really? Has he done well?
Rita: Yes. His turnover was so big he managed to take over a jewellery company that had been a success but was winding down because of bad management. They were no longer able to pay for the upkeep of the stores.
Bob: Wow! How much did he have to pay of his own money?
Rita: Well, he poured a lot of money into it – he put in about a million – but he saved it from going under and it’s making a profit now. In fact he says the profit on wedding rings alone runs to several millions. He says he’s glad he decided to risk the takeover.
Bob: So he’s a rich man now then?
Rita: He’s very rich, but you know something? He still drives around town in that old car of his.

Business English uses a number of specific phrasal verbs that are either rarely used in other contexts, e.g. to start up, to sell up, or are used in other contexts with different meanings, e.g. to turn over. If you have a particular interest in Business English, make a special collection of these as you come across them.

1 created (a business or other organisation) 2 started (a company or organisation) 3 allowing people to use for a short time in exchange for money 4 reached a particular level 5 (noun) extra business in some way related to an earlier successful business 6 (noun) business arrangement
49.1 Match the stories 1–6 with the headlines a–e below.

1. The company has decided to wind down its operations in South America and to concentrate on its ...
2. The company was concealing massive debts, but reached a point where it was bound to go under.
3. The takeover of Westin Engineering by Civic Technologies is to take place after all, it was announced today.
4. A company spokeswoman said profits were now running into six figures. She confirmed that...
5. Mr. Donaldson has decided to sell up and retire to the south of France after 45 years in the business.
6. The lightweight clothes are a spin-off of space technology that sent men to the moon in the 1960s and 1970s.

a) COMPANY FOUNDER TO REALISE BIG PROFIT AFTER LONG CAREER
b) Company announces eight million euro profit
c) Company benefits from decades-old science
d) Company to close overseas factories
e) COMPANIES WILL JOIN TO MAKE HUGE CORPORATION
f) Company financial crash was inevitable

49.3 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs from the opposite page so that the second speaker agrees with and repeats more or less what the first speaker says.

1. Gus: The government has put huge sums of money into agriculture.  
   Henry: Yes, they’ve been ........................................
2. Lotta: I seem to remember Hugh Morris began his business about ten years ago.  
   Jan: Yes, you’re right. He ....................................................
3. Ruth: I would estimate that they’ve lost around five million euros this year.  
   Jamie: Yes, I’d .............................................................
4. Pauline: I hear Macron are establishing a branch in Oslo.  
   Lianne: Yes, they’re ...........................................................
5. Helen: All the repairs on the old building are incredibly expensive.  
   Fiona: Yes, the ............................................................

49.4 Complete these sentences using words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hire</th>
<th>out</th>
<th>turnover</th>
<th>take over</th>
<th>outlet</th>
<th>run to</th>
<th>set-up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Big companies often ................................ small ones.
2. These shops ................................ power tools by the hour.
3. Last year their ................................ was $10 million.
4. A new sports wear ................................ has opened on the edge of town.
5. I couldn’t work there; the ................................ didn’t appeal to me at all.
6. The cost of rebuilding could ......................... a million pounds.
Telephoning

Conversations on the telephone

Client: Can I speak to Mr. Jones, please?
Secretary: I'm afraid Mr. Jones is in a meeting.
Client: OK, I'll call back later.

Client: Could you put me through to Kathryn Parker, please?
Receptionist: May I ask who's calling?
Client: It's David Brown. We were talking a few minutes ago but got cut off.

Sarah: It's a very bad line, isn't it?
Paul: Do you think someone is listening in on our conversation?
Sarah: I think one of the kids must have picked up the extension upstairs, Jan, are you there? Put the phone down please.

1 phone someone for the second time, or ring someone who rang you earlier
2 connect a telephone caller to the person they want to speak to
3 were stopped from continuing the phone conversation because the connection broke
4 secretly listening to a conversation
5 put the part of the phone that you speak into back into its usual position

Conversations about telephoning

Husband: Have you found out about costs for repairing the central heating yet?
Wife: No, I phoned around a couple of companies. [telephoned several people, often in order to find out information]

Husband: And?
Wife: No-one was there so I left messages on the answering machines. But none of them have got back to me yet. [talked to someone, usually to give them information that you were not able to give them before]

Husband: Well, if they don't ring back [telephone someone who rang you earlier] soon, you'd better try phoning up [telephoning] a few more places.

Hotel guest: If I want to dial out, do I have to dial anything first? [use a telephone to call someone not in the same building]
Receptionist: Yes, dial 9 and wait for the tone. Then you can dial an outside number.

Luigi: Do you find it hard to get through to your parents in Tonga? [manage to talk to someone on the telephone]
Marie: Not usually, but it's very expensive so I don't call them often. My mum talks to me and then puts my dad on [give someone the telephone so that they can speak to the person who is on it], and he then puts me on to all my brothers and sisters. I can never get them to hang up [end a phone call by replacing the part of the phone that you are speaking into, usually suddenly] and I don't want to ring off [end a phone call by replacing the part of the phone that you are speaking into] either.

Husband: I don't feel very well today. I've got a terrible headache.
Wife: Oh dear. You'd better ring in sick then, [telephone someone at your place of work to explain why you are not there]
Exercises

50.1 Rewrite the underlined words using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1 Hotel operator: If you want to make a call outside of the hotel, you have to dial 9 first.
2 It's difficult to get a connection to the customer help line in the mornings.
3 I'm sorry, he's out right now. Can you phone again at about five o'clock?
4 Carol telephoned the office to say she's not feeling well.
5 Joanne: Hi! Uncle Jack, it's Jo. How's everything?
   Uncle: Hi! Fine thanks. Just a minute, I'll give the phone to your aunt so you can tell
   her all the news.
6 I'll phone you with my response in a few days.

50.2 Complete the word puzzle.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Down
1 Can I speak to Mr Walsh again please? I was speaking to him and we were
   ______________ off.
2 Hi, I've been meaning to ______________ you up for ages, but I couldn't find your
   number.
3 Hello, are you still there? Hello! I think she's just ______________ off.
4 Whoever it was, they just ______________ up; it must have been a wrong number.

Across
5 Why don't you phone Karen ______________ and invite her to the party.
6 Could you put me ______________ to the sales department please?
7 I can hear funny noises. Do you think someone's ______________ in on our call?

50.3 Here are some more phrasal verbs which you may need to use in connection with
telephoning, especially when using a mobile phone. What do you think they mean? Use a
dictionary if necessary.

```
speak up, hold on, break up, switch off, charge up
```

50.4 Use the phrasal verbs from exercise 50.3 to answer these questions. Use each verb once.

1 How could you explain to a friend why they couldn't reach you on your mobile phone
   when they tried to?
2 How could you tell someone you're speaking to on a mobile phone that the signal is very
   bad and you have difficulty understanding what they're saying?
3 How could you ask someone to speak louder because there's a lot of background noise?
4 How could you ask someone if they have enough electrical power in their mobile phone
   before they go off on a trip?
5 How could you ask someone to wait and not put the phone down while you have to
   interrupt the call for some reason?

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 105
Feelings

Feelings go up and down

Up and down phrasal verbs connected with feelings often refer to positive (up) and negative (down) emotions and emotional events, or a more emotional intensity (up) or less emotional intensity (down).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UP</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brighten up, will you? You’re depressing everyone!</td>
<td>suddenly look or feel happier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The film cheered us up considerably.</td>
<td>made us start to feel happier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There’s no point in being hung up about it; there’s nothing we can do.</td>
<td>becoming very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it (informal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOWN</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She broke down when she was told the bad news.</td>
<td>was unable to control her feelings and started to cry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calm down! Losing your temper won’t solve the problem.</td>
<td>stop feeling angry, upset, or excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I need some time to cool down before I can see him again.</td>
<td>become calmer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More verbs connected with feelings – examples from horoscopes

**SCORPIO**

There’s something you need to tell someone that is making you very angry, so don’t bottle up your emotions. If you do, there is a danger that you will tear yourself apart! 1

**LEO**

You may be unwilling at first to take part in an activity suggested by a close friend, but talk about it, and you may warm to it a bit more. In fact, the idea could soon grow on you and you’ll find yourself doing something you never expected to do and taking it enthusiastically. 2

**VIRGO**

A letter or email will make your heart beat faster, but don’t get carried away; proceed carefully. At work, things are getting better, and you should jump at the chance of a new challenge which will be offered to you soon. 3

**GEMINI**

You feel for a female colleague at work who seems to have so many problems and hang-ups, but be careful; you could soon become more involved than you want to. She will have to pull herself together sooner or later; it’s her life, not yours. 4

**LIBRA**

Feel sorry for someone who is unhappy or in a difficult situation 5

**SCORPION**

Feelings of embarrassment or fear about something, often when it is not necessary to feel that way (informal) 6

**SAGITTARIUS**

Become calm after being very upset or angry 7

---

1 not allow yourself to show or talk about your feelings, especially feelings of anger and sadness (informal)
2 make yourself feel very unhappy
3 become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else
4 eagerly accept a chance to do or have something
51.1 Read the sentences below. Decide which people are experiencing positive feelings and which are experiencing negative feelings.
1. Jill broke down when the doctor told her the results.
2. George is beginning to take to the idea of moving to Boston.
3. Sue has more hang-ups than anyone else I know.
4. Henry should calm down or he'll make himself ill.
5. Mike has cheered up a lot since I last saw him.
6. Mary doesn't seem to be able to pull herself together.
7. Ken is very inclined to bottle up his emotions.
8. Anna has brightened up considerably since this morning.

51.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
1. The news that I didn't have to do the exam after all made me feel happier.
2. Look. Joe. Try to be less angry! Getting angry won't solve the problem.
3. When she heard of her friend's death she lost control of her feelings and wept.
4. She worries so much about silly little problems at work.
5. I wish you'd be a bit more cheerful! You're making me feel depressed!

51.3 Match the statements on the left with the most appropriate response on the right.

1. That new quiz show is growing on me now.
   a. What more can we do to cheer her up?
   b. I know - I do feel for them both.
   c. Yes, I'm beginning to warm to it too.
   d. Don't get carried away!
   e. Yes, I hope he pulls himself together before his next attempt.
   f. Sure, I'd jump at the chance.

2. Would you like to try snowboarding?
3. Tom's marriage problems are tearing him apart.
4. Sam is so hung up about failing his exam.
5. If I win the lottery, I'll buy a flat in New York and one in Rio and ...

51.4 Complete this letter, using verbs or particles from the opposite page.

Dear Angela,

I hope things are OK with you.

We've been having quite a difficult time here. Jim lost his job. After 20 years there he ___________________________ (2) him apart and he has found it very hard to ___________________________ (3) himself together.

However, think goodness, he does seem to be brightening ___________________________ (4) a bit now. He's even beginning to take ___________________________ (5) the idea of doing a retraining course. Mary was very angry at the way her father had been treated - she ___________________________ (6) for him so much. She's cooled ___________________________ (7) a bit now as she realises there is no point in getting too ___________________________ (8) up about it. Since he has been great at trying to ___________________________ (9) us all up through all this.

Hope to hear from you soon.

Jenny

READ: Read an English horoscope page, either in an English magazine or on the Internet. Note down as many phrasal verbs as you can. Use a dictionary to help you understand the meanings and write down a sentence to help you remember the new expressions.
Talking about relationships

Dear Auntie Jo,
I think I’ve fallen for1 the new guy who’s just started work in our office. He fitted in2 at once. He and I get along3 really well, but he hasn’t asked me out4 yet. What should I do?
Miranda Baxton

Dear Auntie Jo,
I’ve been going out with1 my boyfriend for ten months now and we’re planning to get married next year. But last week we fell out2 over something really stupid. He heard a male friend of mine tell me my hair looked nice and he thought it was a chat-up3 line. He got so jealous and wouldn’t speak to me. Do you think a minor falling-out4 like this is a bad sign for our future marriage, or am I worrying too much?
Tanya Wilson

1 (informal) become very attracted to
2 felt happy in a group of people because he was similar to them
3 like each other and are friendly
4 invited someone to go to a place like a cinema or a restaurant, usually to start a romantic relationship

Having a romantic relationship

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Group</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hit it off with someone</td>
<td>Immediately like and become friendly with them (informal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pair off with someone</td>
<td>Start a romantic relationship with them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat someone up</td>
<td>Talk in a way that shows them that you are sexually attracted to them and you try to make them attracted to you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go for a particular type of person or thing</td>
<td>Like that type of person or thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn someone on</td>
<td>Make them interested, often sexually</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Being attracted to someone

There are a lot of phrasal verbs which deal with relationships and how people get on with each other. Look occasionally in a problem page in a newspaper or magazine and note down any new ones that you find.
52.1 Auntie Jo, the agony aunt, is replying to some of the letters she gets. Fill the gaps in her replies.

Dear Tonya,
You say you're worried because you and your fiancé have
(1) ___________________________ out.
Well, take my advice, a temporary
(2) ___________________________ with someone you love is not the end of the world. And your
boyfriend shouldn't worry even if another man does try a
(3) ___________________________ up line with you if you love each
other so much silly things will never threaten your marriage.

Dear Lia,
Your letter about your office
party is typical of many I get.
Everybody tries to
(4) ___________________________ off
with somebody and a lot of
the evening is spent in
(5) ___________________________
people up in the hope of
starting something with them.
But be careful. By accepting the
first guy who asks you, you
could end up with a reputation
for always flirting and never
being serious, and then the
really nice guys won't go
(6) ___________________________
you, and nothing you do or
say will ever turn them
(7) ___________________________ !

Dear Jody,
You say you're
(8) ___________________________
for the new student on your
course, but that you're
afraid he won't
(9) ___________________________
in with your gang of friends.
I suggest you
(10) ___________________________
him out and then meet up
with your friends later in
the evening if they don't
(11) ___________________________
then the choice is simple:
either you lose him and keep
your friends, or you keep him
and perhaps lose 'friends' who
aren't really your friends.

52.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.
1 My friend and I fell away last week because she thinks I'm in love with her boyfriend.
2 The new student was finding it difficult to fit in, as he was older than the other students.
3 When George met his new colleague he really fell to her and now he talks about her all the time.
4 Barry and David hit it of immediately when they were introduced.
5 That horrible man over there was trying to talk me up. Ugh!

52.3 Rewrite the underlined parts of this private diary, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

5 MON
That is a really beautiful girl at the class - helped me to her to try to attract her but didn't work. I'm useless!

8 TUE
That handsome boy attracted all the girls in my maths class. She's adopted us to the group.

7 WED
Nigel started a romantic relationship with him at the party last night. Why am I jealous?

8 THU
Only walked out; ran fast; felt sexually attracted. She's perfect!

9 FRI
No success with the girl in the maths class. Don't think I'm the thin sex or she's attracted to me!

10 SAT
Are having a romantic relationship with Angela for six months now, but still can't stop thinking of other girls.

11 SUN
Gaye and Chris seem to be having a very friendly relationship these days. They think no one has noticed! Ha-ha!
Here are some more letters to Auntie Jo, the agony aunt from Unit 52. Read these letters from a popular young people's magazine along with Jo's replies on the right.

**Dear Auntie Jo,**

My boyfriend and I have just split up after a year together. For the first six months, everything was great, but then we just seemed to drift apart. I didn't really want to finish with him, but he wanted to break off our relationship. Should I ask him if we can start again and try to rediscover the magic of those first six months?  

Linda (aged 19)

When two people grow apart, it's usually because they are basically different. The fact that he broke off with you means he recognises that you don't really have a lot in common. You're young. Let him go!

**Dear Auntie Jo,**

My parents broke up last year and I've been depressed ever since. I see each of them regularly, and I love them, but I feel they have let me down. Is there anything I can do to persuade them to make up and live together again so that my sister and I can have a normal life like other kids?  

Brian (aged 16)

Brian, a marriage breakup is always very sad, but there's not much you can do. They are adults and they have made their own choices. You feel you're missing out on a normal young person's life, but you're not alone. A third of all marriages in Britain end in divorce. Be brave and talk to your friends about it.

**Dear Auntie Jo,**

A couple of years ago my uncle ran off with another woman. She was much younger than him. In fact she was only 20 and he was 52. It ended in disaster. He left her last year and returned to his wife. But the neighbours all stare at him and laugh at him. It seems he'll never live it down. He's doing his best to settle down and be a good husband and uncle again, but I feel so unhappy for him. What can I do?  

Iona (aged 17)

People can be very cruel, Iona, and your uncle may have to settle for a lot more embarrassment before the neighbours forget what happened. The best thing you can do is to show your uncle that you love him and support him and show him that you accept him, and all his faults.

1. ended a relationship or marriage
2. gradually become less friendly and the relationship ends
3. end a romantic relationship (informal)
4. end a relationship
5. gradually become less friendly, often because you do not have the same interests and opinions any more
6. ended a romantic relationship with someone

1. the end of a marriage or relationship ended
2. disappointed me by failing to do what they agreed or what I expected them to do
3. forgive each other and become friendly again
4. (noun) the act or event of breaking up
5. not doing or getting something you would enjoy or that would be good for you, or not having something other people have

1. secretly left a place with someone in order to live with them or marry them, especially when other people think this is wrong
2. stop feeling embarrassed about something you did by waiting until people forget about it
3. start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time
4. accept something, often something that is not exactly what you want, or is not the best
53.1 Match the problems 1-6 with the responses a-f.

1. My husband and I are so busy at work that we seem to be drifting apart. What should I do?
2. How can I finish with my boyfriend without hurting his feelings too much?
3. What can I do to get over the break-up of my marriage? I still love my wife.
4. I always seem to pick boyfriends who let me down. What can I do?
5. I'm 35. Isn't it time I was thinking of settling down?
6. I've decided never to get married. Do you agree with my friends that I will be missing out on a lot?

a) Become friends first - then you should know what he is really like before you take things any further.
b) The right time can arrive at any age - when you meet the right person.
c) Why not take up some new hobby together?
d) Why make such a major decision about your future now? You may feel very differently in a few years' time.
e) Time should slowly make things better for you.
f) Could you try to make him want to split up with you first?

53.2 Rewrite these sentences replacing the phrasal verbs with another phrasal verb from the opposite page, so that the sentences keep the same meanings.

1. My sister and her husband broke up last year.
2. Milly was very upset when her boyfriend broke off with her.
3. We had been drifting apart for a long time, so it was better to separate properly.

53.3 Complete these sentences using appropriate phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. Whenever I quarrel with my girlfriend I can't wait to .................. again.
2. We were all very shocked when Emily left her husband and .................. her boss.
3. After leaving school my best friend got a glamorous job travelling all over the world, but now all she wants to do is get married and .................. somewhere.
4. I am absolutely sure that I can trust him and that he will never .................. me ..................
5. It was so embarrassing when I split tomato soup all over my boss - I'm sure I'll never .................. It ..................
6. I think that children who are educated at home .................. on the opportunity to make friends of their own age.
7. Sally is determined to marry someone who is both handsome and rich and she'll never .................. less.
8. I can't understand why my girlfriend decided to .................. our relationship.
### Secrets

**Angela:** You’re keeping something from me, aren’t you?

**Steve:** Well, sort of. Jill really opened up to me last night. She poured out a lot of things but made me promise not to tell anyone and I can’t go back on my word.

**Angela:** Go on. You can tell me, I won’t let on to Jill or anyone else.

**Steve:** No, I can’t. In the course of her outpouring she owned up to something quite serious and I really can’t tell you about it. You’d be far too shocked!

1. not telling me about something
2. started to talk more about herself and her feelings
3. talked very honestly about what was making her unhappy
4. not do something that you promised you would do
5. tell someone about something that was supposed to be a secret
6. (most) long and emotional expression of what she was feeling
7. admitted she had done something wrong

---

### Table: Conversations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keep on at sb</td>
<td>talk to someone about something many times, usually to complain about something they have done or not done</td>
<td>I wish you wouldn’t keep on at me about my handwriting! No-one else has problems reading it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk down to sb</td>
<td>talk to someone as if they were less clever than you</td>
<td>The best teachers don’t talk down to pupils but speak to them as equals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play down sth or play sth down</td>
<td>try to make people believe that something is not very important or is unlikely to happen</td>
<td>There is no point in trying to play down the incident – too many people saw exactly what happened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pin sb down</td>
<td>make someone give you exact details or a decision about something</td>
<td>He’s the most infuriating man – you can never pin him down to a date on anything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have it out with sb (informal)</td>
<td>talk to someone about something they have said or done that has made you angry in order to improve the situation</td>
<td>Once Sally had had it out with Kim about the housework, things got much better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind up sb or wind sb up (informal)</td>
<td>tell someone something that is not true in order to make a joke or to annoy them</td>
<td>Stop pretending that you’ve lost your sister’s new jacket. It’s not fair to wind her up like that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth off (informal)</td>
<td>talk about a subject as if you know more than everyone else or to complain a lot about something</td>
<td>Robert is always mouthing off about his boss behind his back, but he’d never say anything to his face.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut (sb) up (informal)</td>
<td>stop talking or making a noise, or make someone else do this</td>
<td>Would you please shut up while I’m trying to concentrate on these pages.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

You can sometimes fix phrasal verbs in your mind by writing them in true sentences about a person you know or in an experience you’ve had.
54.1 Read these remarks by different people and then answer the questions below by writing the correct name in the box.

George: I’m determined to have it out with my parents. We can’t go on in this way.
Derron: My sister is always moaning off about something. I wish she’d shut up.
Michael: I think they were trying to play down the whole affair.
Yolanda: The boss seems to have gone back on her word.
Yvette: Hub! My brother has owned up at last! It’s about time!
Gina: I felt my roommate was trying to wind me up.

1 Who is annoyed because someone talks about subjects as if they know more than everyone else or someone complains a lot about something?
2 Who thought someone told them something that wasn’t true in order to make a joke or to annoy them?
3 Who is going to talk to someone about something they have said or done that has made them angry, in order to solve the problem?
4 Who thinks someone is trying to make people believe that something is not very important or is not likely to happen?
5 Who is satisfied that someone has admitted they have done something wrong?
6 Who thinks someone has broken a promise to do something?

54.2 Complete these sentences using words from the opposite page.

1 I felt she was __________________ something from me. I asked her what it was, but she wouldn’t __________________ on.
2 Oh, __________________ up, will you! Don’t __________________ on me all the time!
3 It’s very difficult to __________________ him down. He never likes to make firm plans.
4 She’s an excellent employee. She never __________________ down to her staff, however inadequate they seem.
5 Georgina __________________ out her life story to me late last night. She’s never____________________________ up to me in that way before, and in her __________________ of emotion she revealed to me that she’d been in prison years ago.

54.3 Read these sentences containing rather formal verbs and then write their more informal phrasal verb equivalents in the brackets. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 I promise I won’t reveal __________________ to Simon that you’re moving out of the flat.
2 The government has reneged __________________ on its promise to increase student grants.
3 I had a feeling she was concealing __________________ something from me, something unpleasant.
4 She confessed __________________ to having lied about the missing money.
5 I have finally decided to confront __________________ Jamie. We simply can’t continue with so much tension in the air.

Mr Beanpole had a habit of talking down to people.
Cathy has just had a new baby and is e-mailing her friend, Dolores. Follow the correspondence between the two friends.

Hi Dolores,
You'll be pleased to hear the new baby's doing fine. We've decided to
name him after 1 his grandfather, Patrick. He has blue eyes and quite
fair hair, so he takes after 2 his father. I find it hard to imagine myself
being up 3 with a child. Wish me luck for the next 18 years!
Love, Cathy

Hi Cathy,
Glad to hear everything's OK with the new baby. Babies grow up 4 so
quickly and 18 years will seem like 18 weeks, I'm sure! Are you going
to carry on 5 working or will you stay at home now? When I had my
first child I went back to work, so I really ended up 6 doing two full-
time jobs!
Take care,
Dolores

Hi again,
Thanks for the encouraging words! I don't know what will become
of my career. At the moment all I care about is that little Patrick will
be a nice kid, that he won't drop out of school or college, that he
won't turn to 7 crime or drugs and wind up 8 in prison, and that
he'll be healthy and happy, just like your kids.
Talk to you soon,
Cathy

Hi there,
I'm sure the little lad will live up to 9 all your hopes and expectations!
A lot of 13-year-olds could pass for 10 17 or 18 these days, and the
kind of values that were handed down 11 to us by our parents and
grandparents are considered old-fashioned now. But I'm still optimistic.
Do let me know how things go. Regards to Peter.
Love, Dolores

1. give him the same name as someone else
2. has a similar appearance or character as an older member of his family
3. looking after a child and educating them until they are an adult
4. change from being a child to being an adult
5. continue
6. finally did something, especially without having planned to
7. happen to
8. stop going to classes before completing a course
9. start to do or take something bad, usually because you are unhappy
10. finally do something, especially without having planned to (like the verb end up)
11. be as good as he is expected to be
12. appear to be
13. given or taught, by an older person to a younger person
55.1 Which phrasal verbs in the e-mails on the opposite page could be replaced by the following synonyms? Write the phrasal verbs next to their synonym.

1. continue
2. looks like
3. not complete
4. transmitted
5. be as good as
6. happen to
7. raising
8. look as if they are

55.2 Answer these questions in full sentences, using phrasal verbs.

1. Were you named after anyone? If so, who were you named after?
2. Who, if anyone, do you take after in appearance?
3. Who, if anyone, do you take after in character?
4. Do you think that boys and girls grow up at the same speed?
5. What reason might someone have for dropping out of university?
6. What reason might someone have for turning to crime?
7. Describe someone you know who could pass for a different age than they really are.
8. Do you possess anything that has been handed down from your great-grandparents?
9. Do you think that mothers and fathers have an equally important role to play in bringing up their children?
10. Until what age would you like to carry on working?

55.3 Complete this short biography, using verbs from the opposite page.

RICHARD POTTS WAS BORN 100 years ago today in the same small town in Wales that he lives in now. He was (1) ________________ after his maternal grandfather, Richard Jones, the distinguished sculptor, whom he was later sold to (2) ________________ after both character and appearance. The young Richard was orphaned at an early age and was (3) ________________ up by an aunt. He failed to (4) ________________ up to his relatives' hopes for him by (5) ________________ out of school at the age of 15. They were very concerned about what would (6) ________________ of him and, although there must have been plenty of temptations encouraging the young boy to (7) ________________ to gambling and drink, he resisted them all and (8) ________________ up taking a job in a coal mine. He impressed the managers so much that he eventually (9) ________________ up as a member of the board. He (10) ________________ on working until five years ago, when ill health forced him to retire, but he is still a familiar figure around the streets of his home town.

Read an obituary or article about the death of someone famous from any English language newspaper and note down any phrasal verbs that you find in it.
Health

Symptoms
These speakers all have health problems that can be described using phrasal verbs or in the case of blocked-up, an adjective based on a phrasal verb.

1. (informal) vomiting
2. becoming ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious, e.g. flu, a cold
3. (informal) see note 2
4. trying hard to get rid of
5. dislocated or injured by making a bone move from its usual place
6. get rid of
7. become larger or rounder than usual
8. (adjective) filled so that you are unable to breathe normally
9. become unconscious; fainted

One medical story
Maggie has had a hard time recently. Firstly, her sister broke down 1 after her divorce and was sick for several months. Maggie was still caring for 2 her when her brother was hit on the head by a tile that fell from a roof. He was unconscious for a couple of days. Fortunately, he pulled through 3 and has now more or less fully recovered although he does seem to have slowed down 4 a lot. No sooner were they both better than their grandfather passed on 5 too.

1. became mentally or physically ill because of an unpleasant experience
2. looking after someone who is too ill, too young, or old to look after themselves
3. recovered from a serious illness
4. become less physically active than before
5. died
6. died

Try to learn phrasal verbs in chunks or longer phrases, e.g. I'm coming down with flu. She's fighting off a cold. My nose is blocked-up.
56.1 Complete this text, using particles from A.

I feel as if I'm coming (1) with flu. I'm fighting (2) a sore throat and my nose is constantly blocked. (3). My glands have swollen (4) and, if I try to eat anything, I feel as if I'm going to throw (5). I wish I could have (6) to do. I can't afford to be absent.

56.2 Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences, using a phrasal verb from the opposite page.
1. I've had a sore throat for a week now - I just can't get rid of it.
2. Meg hadn't eaten anything for 48 hours and so it wasn't surprising that she fainted in the middle of her gym lesson.
3. The doctors were afraid that the old man wouldn't survive the attack of pneumonia, but amazingly he recovered and was soon on his feet again.
4. I think I'm just about to get a cold - I feel a bit shivery.
5. My thumb became bigger after I accidentally hit it with a hammer.
6. The sea was so rough that many people were vomiting over the side of the ship.
7. People usually write letters of condolence to the relatives of someone who has died.
8. The old lady is in great pain because she has dislocated her hip.
9. After the operation, her sister visited her until she was completely recovered.
10. How do you think you contracted chicken pox?

56.3 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.

1. Jim's uncle passed for her elderly mother.
2. Sonya is fighting down a bit as they get older.
3. Rita is kept very busy caring down with flu.
4. Mary's ankles swelled off a bout of flu.
5. Most people usually slow up during the long flight.
6. I think Joe is going away last year.

56.4 Complete these sentences in any way that makes sense.

1. When her great-aunt passed away Mary felt very
2. Jack broke down when
3. The last time I threw up was
4. You can get a blocked-up nose if
5. Ken's finger swelled up after
6. The best way to fight off a cold is to

Further Look at a health advice page of an English language newspaper or magazine. Write down any phrasal verbs that you find there. Write them down in sentences to help you remember them.
Sports items from newspapers

WEATHER DELAYS CUP FINAL

The kick-off of the Cup Final between Arsenal and Liverpool was delayed yesterday due to bad weather.

1 (noun) start of a game of football

ARCHERY: England defeated

ENGLAND were knocked out of the European Archery Championship this afternoon in a surprise win by Sweden.

2 forced to leave the competition because they were defeated

JOHNSON TO ATTEMPT RECORD

Welsh swimmer Pete Johnson says he is going for the world record in tomorrow's 100 metres freestyle event.

3 will try to achieve something difficult [e.g. break a record, win a medal]

DORNTON TO PLAY HARSFIELD

With both teams on 28 points, Dornton will meet Harsfield in a play-off this Saturday at Dornton's home ground to decide who goes up to the first division.

4 (noun) game to decide the winner, especially when the teams or competitors have the same number of points

People talking about their sporting activities

I work out at the gym three times a week to try to burn off the calories and stay slim. I find it also helps me to work off the stress of work.

1 exercise in order to improve the strength or appearance of your body
2 use or get rid of energy, calories or fat by doing a lot of physical exercise
3 get rid of an unpleasant feeling, e.g. aggression or anger, by doing something energetic

Before I start a match I always do a warm-up. Then after the match I make sure I cool down and stretch properly.

4 (noun) gentle exercises which prepare you for more serious exercise (from the verb warm up)
5 become cooler

World-class marathon running can be very hard. You need great mental stamina, and you must never give in. It's a great feeling when you pull ahead of the rest of the field and know you're winning.

6 accept that you have been defeated and agree to stop competing or fighting
7 suddenly get in front of another person who was previously running at the same speed as you

Table tennis is a great sport. Anyone can join in. We have a knockout competition at work every month, just for fun.

8 become involved in an activity with other people
9 (noun) a competition in which only the winners of each stage play in the next stage, until one person or team is the final winner
Exercise

57.1 Match the phrasal verb on the left with its more formal equivalent on the right.

1. join in
   attempt to achieve

2. give in
   defeat

3. go for
   surrender

4. pull ahead
   participate

5. knock out
   overtake

57.2 Choose phrasal verb expressions from the opposite page to complete each of these notices from a sports club noticeboard.

1. Always do a ................................................................. before doing any strenuous exercise.
2. Sign below if you would like to take part in next month’s ........................................... squash tournament.
3. Eat healthily. Remember you have to exercise for at least two hours to ............................................ the calories from one cream cake!
4. Regular exercise helps to .............................................. stress.
5. Don’t forget to ............................................................. before running round the track.
6. Remember it’s just as important to .............................................. properly as it is to warm up.

57.3 Answer these questions, using full sentences.

1. How often do you work out each month and what do you do when you work out?
2. How might you warm up before running a marathon?
3. Why would you be pleased if you pulled ahead of the other runners in a race?
4. Which sport is better for burning off calories and why – tennis or table tennis?
5. Would you prefer to join in a snooker game or a football game after work?
6. What kind of medal would a top athlete go for?

57.4 Describe what is happening in these pictures, using one of the nouns or verbs from the opposite page.

1 2 3

57.5 Here are three more phrasal verbs with sporting connections that were not on the opposite page. Can you choose the correct definition from the box for each of them?

- was defeated by
- progressed
- told to leave

1. If a footballer gets a red card, he is ........................................ the pitch.
2. England went out to Germany in the semi-finals.
3. Our team won the game and so they ........................................ to the next round.

English Practice: Verbs in Use 119
### Homes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move out</td>
<td>stop living in a particular house or flat</td>
<td>Jack moved out of his college room last Monday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move in</td>
<td>begin living in a new house or flat</td>
<td>A new family has moved in to the flat next door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move in together</td>
<td>start living in the same house as someone</td>
<td>Sam and I have always been good friends so when we both got jobs in Rio, we decided to move in together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live on s/t</td>
<td>have an amount of money in order to buy the things you need</td>
<td>I earn just enough to live on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live off s/t</td>
<td>have enough money for the things you need by taking out of your savings</td>
<td>While Sue was unemployed she had to live off her savings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up s/t or</td>
<td>put s/t up</td>
<td>Would you be able to put me up when I’m in London next week?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep over</td>
<td>sleep in someone else’s house for a short time</td>
<td>My daughter loves it when a school friend sleeps over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(noun) a sleepover</td>
<td>The kids had a sleepover.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Do not confuse to sleep over with to oversleep. The verb to oversleep means to sleep longer than you should have done, e.g. If I oversleep and am late for work again, I’ll lose my job.

### Daily routines

I’ve got a new job at the airport and have moved into a flat with a couple of friends. During the week I have to get up early as I have to be at the airport by 8.00 a.m. I try to be very quiet in the mornings so I don’t wake up my flatmates. At the weekends I love sleeping in. On Saturdays I sometimes lie in till 11. I can’t have a lie-in if I’m playing football though, which I sometimes do on Saturday mornings. On weekday evenings I turn in quite early, about 10.00 p.m. usually, but I stay up at weekends, of course. If I get home on Saturday night before my flatmates, I walk up until they arrive and we have a drink and a chat before going to bed.

I love sleeping in at weekends.

1. get out of bed
2. make them become conscious
3. sleeping later in the morning than usual
4. stay in bed later in the morning than usual
5. (noun) longer time in bed in the morning than usual
6. go to bed
7. go to bed later than usual
8. stay awake because you are waiting for someone to arrive
58.1 Look at these notices a–f on a college noticeboard and answer the questions below.

a) Final-year students moving out after graduation have furniture to sell.

Tel: Steve and Nick on 76544.

b) Living off your parents or off your savings? Earn extra cash by working in weekends. Call 867474.

c) Rooms available on house for female graduate student. Five minutes from campus. Must be able to move in immediately. Ring 6534892, ask for Julia.

d) Student grants are not enough to live on! Join our protest outside the Senate Building, Friday 2 p.m.

Bring your friends!

e) Time to move on? If you’ve just graduated and want careers advice, come to the careers workshop at 3 p.m. Thursday 28 May, room 128, Hughes Building.

f) Female postgrad 24, looking for like-minded, non-smoking female to move in next month. If you think you could enjoy living together, call me on 7333207. Nicki.

Which notice would you respond to if ...

1. ... your income was not sufficient to meet your needs and you were angry about it?
2. ... you felt you needed to take on a new challenge or start a new phase in your life?
3. ... you were looking for bargain items because you’re going into an unfurnished flat?
4. ... you were female and about to leave your accommodation and had nowhere to live?
5. ... you were dependent on others for your income and wanted to earn your own?
6. ... you were a female wishing to share a house with a girl who might become a friend?

58.2 Are you a sleep lover? Fill the gaps in the magazine questionnaire and then answer the questions by ticking the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The sleep lover survey</th>
<th>The sleep lover survey</th>
<th>The sleep lover survey</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. What time do you normally wake?</td>
<td>2. Do you feel sleepy if you wake up after midnight?</td>
<td>3. Do you have a good night’s sleep at weekends?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Would you wait for a friend or relative you were putting up in if they were arriving very late?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Do you enjoy a late night if you don’t have to get up?</td>
<td>6. What time do you usually turn off the alarm?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How often do you sleep in at a friend’s house?</td>
<td>8. How often do you not hear your alarm and wake up?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.3 Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. I’ll be late back tonight so please don’t bother me just now.
2. Kate can’t afford a hotel so she’s asked a friend to put her up for a night.
3. I need an alarm clock to stop me from oversleeping.
4. The removal firm helped us to carry all the furniture out of our old house.
5. I’m really tired. I think I’m going to have an early night soon.
6. Gordon and Martin already knew each other well before they decided to move in together.
Arranging social gatherings

Read the picture story below and note the phrasal verbs.

phrasal verb meaning alternative phrasal verb
ask sb over/round invite someone to come to your house invite to around/round
come over visit someone at their house come around/round
bring along sb/sth or bring sb/sth along bring someone or something somewhere
pop in/into go into a place just for a short time (informal) have sb over
have sb around/round if you have someone around, they come to your house for a social visit

Other socialising verbs

I met Peter the other day. He was asking after you. [ask for information about someone, especially about their health]
I'll call round and see Uncle Jim after work today. [visit someone who lives near to you for a short time]
Please drop in/round any time - I'm usually at home. [informal: make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before]
The boss has invited me out. I wonder what she wants? [ask someone to go with you to a place, e.g. a restaurant or the cinema]

A: I'll bring that CD round for you to listen to tomorrow.
B: Great! Could you also bring round that book I left you? [bring someone or something somewhere, especially to someone's house]
59.1 Choose one of the phrasal verbs from A to report what Tim says in the sentences below.

**EXAMPLE**

Tim: Would you like to come to the cinema?

He invited me out.

1. Tim: Jane can come with you if you like.
   He said I could ............... Jane ............... if I liked.

2. Tim: You can both come to my place after the film.
   He ............... us ............... after the film.

3. Tim: I'll quickly go to the shop and get some biscuits on the way home.
   He said he would ............... the shop for some biscuits on the way home.

4. Tim: I love it when people come to visit me.
   He said he loved ............... people ............... .

5. Tim: You can borrow that CD I was telling you about if my friend returns it.
   He said I could borrow the CD if his friend ............... it ............... before my party.

59.2 Correct the errors with the particles in these sentences.

1. My parents are always asking over you so I'll tell them your news next time I see them.
2. Do drop out some time when you're passing our house and have a cup of tea.
3. My uncle has invited me and a friend in to a smart restaurant to celebrate my birthday.
4. Of course you can bring your brother with when you come to our place tomorrow.
5. I often call about and see my grandmother on my way home from work.

6. I hope I'm not in trouble. The boss has just asked me to pop about to his office.

59.3 Explain the difference in meaning between these pairs of sentences.

1. a) I've got to pop up and see Bill in his office.
    b) I've got to pop down and see Bill in his office.

2. a) It's time I invited Andy and Becky over for a meal.
    b) It's time I invited Andy and Becky out for a meal.

3. a) Shall we call round and see Peggy this afternoon?
    b) Shall we drop round and see Peggy this afternoon?

4. a) I'll bring my niece round at the weekend.
    b) I'll bring my niece along at the weekend.

59.4 Write down four different ways in which you could invite someone to visit you at your place. Use a different phrasal verb each time.

59.5 Here are some more phrasal verbs connected with the theme of socialising. What do you think the phrasal verbs in bold mean? Use a dictionary if necessary.

**Kath:** Did you enjoy your date with Paul?

**Anne:** Don't talk to me about Paul! He stood me up! I waited there for at least half an hour and then I decided just to go to the cinema on my own. It was really annoying because my sister had wanted to tag along but I wouldn't let her and in the end I was all alone. I thought we were going to have this lovely romantic evening! If you run across him, you can tell him I'm really annoyed with him!
Food and drink

Preparing food and drink

Martha was having a dinner party for some friends. A few days earlier she had prepared a chicken casserole and put it in the freezer to make sure it did not go off. On the morning of the dinner party she removed it from the freezer and thawed it out. Then before her friends arrived she put the chicken cutlets into the oven and made a salad. She heated up the casserole, making sure that it did not boil over.

- became not good to eat because it is too old
- let it gradually become warmer so that it was not frozen any more

B

Serving food and drink

When her friends arrived, Martha handed round olives and other snacks and her boyfriend poured out drinks. He went round the room tapping up glasses whenever he noticed that anyone needed a top-up. Then they sat at the table and had the chicken casserole. Everyone said how well it went with the salad and nothing was left over at the end of the meal.

- offered something, especially food and drink, to each person in a group
- filled glasses or cups with a drink
- putting more drink into someone’s glass or cup

C

Styles of eating and drinking

As there were no leftovers the next day, Martha decided to get a takeaway. She ordered a curry to take away. Martha’s brother says that she lives on oil and curry because she eats it so often. Martha denies that, of course, but she admits that if ever she and her boyfriend eat out, they always go to a curry restaurant.

- (noun) food prepared for a previous meal but not eaten
- (noun) a meal that you buy and take somewhere else to eat. Takeaway is also the place where you buy a meal like this, e.g. a Chinese takeaway

- buy prepared food in a shop or restaurant and take it somewhere else to eat
- only eats a particular type of food
- eat a meal in a restaurant not at home

You will find quite a few more phrasal verbs on the food theme if you look at the instructions in a recipe book, e.g. cut up an onion, take off the skins of the tomatoes, etc. If possible look in an English language recipe book or search for some recipes on the Internet and make a note of any phrasal verbs that you find there.

124 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Exercises

60.1 Look at A and B opposite. Then complete these sentences with an appropriate phrasal verb.
1. Your glass is half-empty. Let me __________________________ it up for you.
2. The pizza’s cold. I’ll __________________________ it up for you.
3. The chicken’s frozen. I’ll put it in the microwave to __________________________ it out.
4. When all the guests are here, I’ll __________________________ out the champagne.
5. No-one’s eating the nuts and crisps. Shall I __________________________ them round?

60.2 Use phrasal verbs from the opposite page to complete the second person’s responses.

I: This milk smells bad.
 II: Yes, I think __________________________.

I: We need something to accompany the fish.
 II: Yes, we need something that will __________________________.

I: It’s time to start cooking the potatoes.
 II: OK, I’ll __________________________.

I: We’ll have to keep the sauce on a very low heat.
 II: Yes, we’ll have to make sure it __________________________.

I: Let’s go to a restaurant this evening.
 II: Good idea. It’s ages since we last __________________________.

60.3 Answer the following questions.

1. Three phrasal verbs on the opposite page also have noun forms. What are the verbs and what are their noun forms?
2. In the question, ‘Susie, would you pass the biscuits round for me, please?’ which phrasal verb on the opposite page means the same as pass round?
3. Which two phrasal verbs mean that you regularly eat one type of food to the exclusion of others?

60.4 Complete these sentences with words from exercise 60.3.

A. We’ve got some nice __________________________ from the party last night. Shall I heat them up?
B. Some people seem to __________________________ junk food. It can’t be good for them.
C. Could you __________________________ these snacks to the guests? Thanks. [two answers]
D. I think you’d like a __________________________ ? There’s plenty more coffee in the pot.
E. Do you want to eat your food in the restaurant or __________________________ ?
F. The food from the __________________________ was as good as anything we could have cooked at home.
G. Nothing __________________________ at the end of the meal.

60.5 In some of these sentences it is possible to separate the verb and the particle. Where possible, write the alternative sentence.

I. Would you hand round the peanuts, please?
 II. I don’t think my sister lives on fish and chips.
III. Don’t forget to throw out the gateau.
IV. I don’t think that chips go with caviar.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 125
Weather

The weather forecast

It will brighten up¹ in the north of England tomorrow morning, but the sun won't last long and the region will soon cloud over² again. Rain in the east will clear up³ later. An area of high pressure means it should warm up⁴ over the next few days in most regions, except in the far north, where it will actually cool down⁵ a little because of strong north-easterly winds. On the south coast winds will pick up⁶ during the afternoon, becoming strong by the evening.

¹ become warmer
² become cooler
³ become stronger

Talking about the weather and its effects

Jim is talking about his camping trip to the Scottish mountains.

The weather was dreadful; we were there for a week and the storms just never let up¹. We were flooded out² twice in our tent and ended up staying in a hostel. It just poured down³ every day — one heavy downpour⁴ after another. We were rained off⁵ most days and couldn't do any serious walking. Then one day we thought the storms had blown over⁶, so we climbed one of the highest peaks in the area. It started to snow. Luckily there was a cabin at the summit, so we took shelter there. We were snowed in⁷ for two days before we could get out and go back down again. I shall never forget it as long as I live!

¹ stopped or improved
² had to leave a home or place because of a flood
³ rained heavily
⁴ [noun] a very heavy period of rain (from the verb pour down)
⁵ if an outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining
⁶ become less strong and then ended
⁷ were unable to leave that place because there was so much snow

Help yourself to learn phrasal verbs by drawing word diagrams based on one verb, e.g. pick, blow, or on one topic, e.g. weather.
Exercises

61.1 Complete these sentences using one of the phrasal verbs from A. Write the verbs in an appropriate form.

1. There’s a lovely blue sky now but unfortunately the forecast says that it’s going
   .............................. later in the day.
2. I hate it when it’s so hot — I wish it would
   ..............................
3. Let’s go and fly the kite — it’ll be fun now the wind
   ..............................
4. The sea is quite cool in the mornings but by midday it has usually
   ..............................
5. Let’s go for a walk this afternoon if the rain
   ..............................
6. We could have a picnic this afternoon if the weather
   ..............................

61.2 Match the weather situation on the left with the most logical consequence on the right.

1. We were snowed in. We went for a walk in the evening.
   Some trees got blown down.
2. We were flooded out. All our carpets were ruined.
   The teams were very disappointed.
3. The rain didn’t let up. We couldn’t even open the front door.
4. It cleared up later on. We ate our picnic in the car.
5. A strong wind picked up. We went for a walk in the evening.
6. The match was rained off. All our carpets were ruined.

61.3 Complete these sentences with a noun or phrasal verb from the opposite page.

1. It rained heavily all day. I’ve never seen such a
   ..............................
2. It’s been pouring down all day. I wish it would
   ..............................
3. If the river breaks its banks the villagers will be
   ..............................
4. No-one left their homes until the hurricane
   ..............................
5. Because of the storms, a number of football matches
   ..............................
6. It’s too gloomy to take good photos now. Why don’t you wait until it
   ..............................?
7. It’s very hot there in summer — even at night it doesn’t
   ..............................
8. It’s been terribly cold but they have promised that it will
   .............................. next week.

61.4 Some of the phrasal verbs on the opposite page can be used in a metaphorical way. Try to work out the metaphorical meanings and answer these questions.

1. If Joan is brightening up a bit, is her mood getting more or less cheerful?
2. Would you suggest that someone should cool down if they are angry or if they are sad?
3. If an argument or scandal blows over, does it start or finish?
4. If an illness clears up, does it get better or worse?
5. If a party warms up, does it get more or less enjoyable?
6. If someone’s face clouds over, do they start to look worried or happy?

Follow up

Write a paragraph about the weather you have experienced recently. Use as many as possible of the words presented on the opposite page.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Travel

A Going on a journey

Matthew had had a busy time at work so he was glad to get away! from London for a month's holiday. He set off/out last Saturday. His journey really started off at Waterloo Station when he got on the Eurostar train to Paris. He was heading for a villa in the south of France but was planning to stop off in Paris for a couple of days before continuing south.

1. go somewhere for a holiday, especially when you need a rest
2. started his journey
3. began
4. boarded
5. visit for a short time when on the way somewhere else

B Travel in general

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>check in</td>
<td>arrive at a hotel, stay who you are and be given a key for your room.</td>
<td>You go to reception and check in while I park the car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check out</td>
<td>leave a hotel after paying and giving back the key of your room.</td>
<td>I went to the hotel hoping to meet Sam but he had already checked out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get in</td>
<td>(of a train, bus, plane, etc.) arrive at a particular time.</td>
<td>My train got in at 6:30 p.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull in</td>
<td>(of a train) arrive in a station.</td>
<td>The train pulled in exactly on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull out</td>
<td>(of a train) leave a station.</td>
<td>Unfortunately, the train I'd hoped to catch was pulling out just as I arrived on the platform.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Air travel

Louis was lucky enough to get a standby ticket for New Zealand last week. There weren't many people on the flight so she checked in quickly. The flight took off on time and touched down half an hour early. On her way home she is hoping to be able to stop over in Hong Kong for a day or two.

1. (noun) cheap ticket for a flight which you buy just before the flight if seats are available
2. showed her ticket at the official desk (the check-in) so she could be given a boarding card
3. began to fly
4. landed on the ground
5. stop somewhere for a period of time when you are on a long journey
Exercises

62.1 Write sentences that mean the opposite of the sentences below, using verbs from A.
1. Jack arrived home last Sunday.
2. Jill got off the plane in Dubai.
3. My journey ended in a very exciting way.

62.2 Fill the gaps in this Internet chat session between Charlie and her friend Lin.

62.3 The phrasal verbs below have noun or adjective forms. Complete the table and write an example sentence for each noun or adjective form. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>noun/adjective form</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>touch down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get away</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop over</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

62.4 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in this text. There are six mistakes in total.

I went off for Waterloo Station at 11 a.m. and there I got up the midday Eurostar train to Paris. It pulled off exactly on time and soon we were in the Channel Tunnel. After a couple of hours we pulled over at Paris Gare du Nord Station. Here I checked off from my ticket and then back. We touched on at Heathrow Airport at 11 a.m.
**Driving**

### Stopping to do things

- **Could you just draw up near the garage, and I'll put the boxes in the boot.**
- **Could you drop me off here please? That's the restaurant I'm going to — over there.**
- **What a beautiful view! Can you just pull over and I'll take a photograph.**
- **Thanks for the lift. See you later.**
- **No problem. I'll be here at four o'clock to pick you up.**
- **I'll have to ask her to pull up. I'm feeling sick.**
- **I'll just pull in at this petrol station and fill up before we get onto the motorway.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>draw up</td>
<td>If a vehicle, or someone in a vehicle, draws up, they arrive somewhere and stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop off sb/sth or drop sb/sth off</td>
<td>Take someone to a place that they want to go to, or deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull up</td>
<td>If a car pulls up, it stops, often for a short time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull over</td>
<td>Drive a car to the side of the road in order to stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up sb/sth or pick sb/sth up</td>
<td>To collect someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something you have left somewhere or that you have bought.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull in or pull into somewhere</td>
<td>If a car pulls in or pulls into a place, it moves to the side of the road or to another place where it can stop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Driving problems

- **Police said the van had pulled out** to overtake a lorry when the van driver lost control and crashed into the central barrier of the motorway.  
  1. driven out of the traffic lane it was in and entered a faster lane or the other side of the road

- **Two children were knocked down** by a drunken driver. Both children were seriously injured and police have arrested the driver.  
  2. hit by a vehicle and injured or killed

- **A elderly man was run over** at the corner of Pierce Street and Welbourne Avenue. He was  
  1. hit by a vehicle and driven over, injuring or killing him

- **A pile-up involving twenty vehicles caused a 10-mile tailback on the M12 motorway today.**  
  4. (noun) crash involving several vehicles

- **Police blamed fog and black ice.**  
  5. (noun) long line of traffic that is moving very slowly

130 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
63.1 Complete these sentences using phrasal verbs from A. Write the verbs in the appropriate form.

1. If you __________________ in the next lay-by, we can have a short break.
2. If you’d like a lift to the party I could __________________ on my way there and then I can easily __________________ on my way home afterwards.
3. I had been waiting for at least half an hour before a bus eventually __________________.
4. I was looking out of the window when Rose’s taxi __________________ outside our gate.

63.2 Write the phrasal verb expressions presented on the opposite page into one of these categories.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>words relating to moving and stopping the car</th>
<th>words relating to accidents and traffic problems</th>
<th>words relating to transporting other people</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back in off out over up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

63.3 Complete this letter with an appropriate particle from the box. Use each word once only.

Dear Diana,

Thank you for the lovely day we had with you. It was so kind of you to let us bring Anne’s friend, Ginx. Unfortunately, the only problem was the journey home. There had been a terrible pile-____________________ (1) on the motorway and, as a result, there was a hold____________________ (2) for at least six miles. In the end, we pulled ______________________ (3) at a service station and waited there until it cleared. In the car park there Ginx’s mother got trodden ______________________ (4) as a car pulled ______________________ (5) far too quickly from behind a parked lorry. We were very relieved when we finally dropped Ginx ______________________ (6) at her parents’ and made our own way home.

much love,

Fiona

63.4 Here are some more phrasal verbs and nouns connected with driving. Match the words in bold 1–6 with the definitions a–f.

1. To get to the farm take the second turn-off on the left after the crossroads.
2. The car left the main road and turned off down a narrow track.
3. The car was written off in the accident.
4. The insurance company agreed that the car was a write-off.
5. You get out of the car here and I’ll find a parking spot and then meet you in the café.
6. Ian broke his arm when he fell off his bike after running into a lamp post.

a) leave a vehicle
b) damage a vehicle so badly that it cannot be repaired
c) accidentally hit something while driving a vehicle
d) leave the road you are on to travel along another one
e) road that goes off another road
f) vehicle that is not worth repairing after an accident
## Electricity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch/turn on sth or switch/turn sth on</td>
<td>touch a switch to make a machine or electrical device start working</td>
<td>When I tried to switch/turn on my computer in the morning, nothing happened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch/turn off sth or switch/turn sth off</td>
<td>touch a switch to make an electrical device stop working</td>
<td>Would the last person to leave the room please switch/turn off the lights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plug in sth or plug sth in or plug sth into sth</td>
<td>connect to an electricity supply</td>
<td>The computer isn’t working because you haven’t plugged it in! You can plug it into the wall there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn up sth or turn sth up</td>
<td>make louder or stronger</td>
<td>Can you turn up the TV – I can hardly hear what the actors are saying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge up sth or charge sth up</td>
<td>put electricity into a piece of equipment</td>
<td>My mobile phone isn’t working – I need to charge it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off</td>
<td>make a loud noise, e.g. an alarm clock or a burglar alarm</td>
<td>The car alarm went off in the middle of the night, waking all the neighbours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut out</td>
<td>suddenly stop working, e.g. a machine or engine</td>
<td>The pilot’s radio cut out as the plane was flying over the Himalayas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Doing technical things

All the following verbs may have their object either before or after the particle, e.g. *pump tyres up* or *pump up tyres*.

Joe’s pumping up his tyres.

Len is at the photocopier running off twenty copies of the agenda for the meeting.

Emma is loading up the washing machine.

Marco videoed a film last night and is now playing it back.

Paula is measuring out 100 grams of sugar.
Exercises

64.1 Look at these instructions for using a personal digital organizer. Complete the instructions, using phrasal verbs from A.

1. Remove computer from packaging. Do not ...................... the computer on at this point.
2. Insert the power cable as shown and ...................... the unit into an electrical supply.
3. If the screen illuminates, ...................... off the computer using the 'on/off' button.
4. Allow the battery to ...................... up for at least 12 hours.
5. The screen brightness can be controlled using the screen button. ...................... up the brightness by pressing the button till the desired level is reached.

64.2 Rewrite the underlined words, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. I'll put all the things to be washed up in the dishwasher for you.
2. Press the 'play' button so we can listen to that tape you recorded at the concert.
3. The mechanic put some air into the tyres while he was servicing the car.
4. The security alarm began to ring accidentally when we opened the door to the office.
5. I was driving up a steep hill when the engine suddenly stopped working.
6. Could you produce thirty copies of this report for the meeting, please?
7. We've just bought a breadmaking machine. All you do is weigh and pour the exact amounts of all the ingredients, put them in the machine and switch it on.
8. Don't switch on the vacuum cleaner until it is connected to the electricity supply.

64.3 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

1. I couldn’t hear what they were saying on the radio so I turned it down.
2. What must we do when goes the alarm bell off?
3. My mobile is low. Can I charge it up here?
4. Could you help me, please, by filling up the washing machine?
5. It’s very dark in here – do switch off the light.
6. Mel asked him to measure off 250 grams of butter.

FOLLOW

Look at the instructions for any electrical device you have, e.g. a mobile phone, a DVD player. If there is an instruction section in English, compare it with the section in your own language and make sure you understand any phrasal verbs you find.
Computers

Working with files or documents
Ron: It would be a disaster if I lost all this work I’ve done.
Martin: Well, you should back your work up every day [make a copy of computer information so that you do not lose it]. I keep a back-up of important files on floppies or a CD-ROM [noun: extra copy for safety].
Professor Dell: I have to put all these statistics into my research paper.
I hate typing figures; I’m so slow.
Rana: Well, why don’t you save time and pay one of your students to type/key them in? [put information into a computer using a keyboard]
Kirsty: I find it difficult to read my work on screen.
It doesn’t seem real somehow.
Trevor: Well, don’t you print it out? [produce a printed copy of a document that has been written on a computer]
Kirsty: Yes, I always find it easier to read a printout myself. [noun: printed copy of an electronic document]
Luke: I can’t see the detail on this picture file, it’s too small.
Anne: No problem. You can just zoom in by clicking on this icon here [show a clear and detailed picture of something]. And then you can just zoom out [show something in less detail] by clicking on this little icon here.

Note that with the verbs back up, type in, key in and print out, the object can go either before or after the particle, e.g. back a file up or back up a file.

Using a network and the Internet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>log on/off</td>
<td>put your name into a computer so that you can start using it</td>
<td>You can log on/off using my password if you want to use the computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hack into sth</td>
<td>get into someone else’s computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal</td>
<td>Someone hacked into the computers at work and destroyed important data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up sth or pick sth up</td>
<td>connect to the Internet and access e-mails</td>
<td>I’ll take my laptop so I should be able to pick up my e-mails while I’m away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scroll across/ down/up (sth)</td>
<td>move across/down/up a web page or other document on a computer screen</td>
<td>Scroll up to the top of the page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many websites are in English. Next time you visit a website, note down any phrasal verbs that are used on the web pages, e.g. check out our new products.
65.1 Imagine that you are writing a report on a computer in your office or college. Write the things from the box below in the order in which you would do them.

back up your work log off key in your report log on print out your work

65.2 Complete each of these sentences, using a phrasal verb expression from the opposite page.

1 If you find it hard to see the detail in the picture, __________________ so you can see more. Then click on the same icon again to __________________ and the picture will go back to normal size.
2 Although I'll be working away from the office for a couple of weeks, I'll still be __________________ my e-mails every day.
3 If you __________________ to the bottom of the page, you'll find the data you want.
4 I __________________ to this brilliant new website last night. Let me give you the address so that you can check it out.
5 On these disks you'll find a __________________ of all the data connected with the project.
6 Do you think you could let me have a __________________ of that screen? I don't have the time to write down all the details.

65.3 Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1 Joe was very upset when he realised that someone had hacked __________ his computer.
   a) off   b) on   c) into   d) out
2 For security reasons, always log __________ when you leave your computer unattended for any period of time.
   a) on   b) in   c) out   d) up
3 My secretary is very quick at keying __________ data.
   a) onto   b) on   c) into   d) in
4 It took ages to print the whole report __________
   a) out   b) down   c) up   d) in
5 The ability to zoom __________ is particularly useful when you are working on detailed diagrams.
   a) out   b) in   c) up   d) on
6 Larry went into a cybercafé in Bangkok to pick __________ his e-mails.
   a) out   b) on   c) off   d) up

65.4 Explain when you would want to click on these icons.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 135
1 suddenly happened and became serious (used about something negative like violence, anger or an argument) exploded

2 NT 3 causing people in power to lose their position
4 suddenly start, usually used about something dangerous and unpleasant like war, fire or disease (noun = outbreak)

B

Slimming breakthrough

NEWS leaked out yesterday that a major US pharmaceutical laboratory is about to launch a dramatic new slimming drug. The lab was in discussions last year with a British company about the manufacture of the drug, but the British company pulled out after a disagreement about safety procedures. A French company also broke off talks with the lab last month.

C

A survey published today reveals that the number of accidents caused by cars driving 100 fast has shot up in the last couple of years. A government spokesperson said that they are determined to crack down on any driver caught exceeding the speed limit. Police have been promised financial support to enable them to step up all possible measures to make motorists reduce their speed.

D

Jail breakout alarms villagers

A dangerous prisoner who escaped from Kenton prison last night is causing alarm among local residents. It is thought that the escaped convict may have found a hideaway not far from the prison and police have encouraged the inhabitants of nearby villages to look out for anything suspicious.
66.1 Look at these news headlines then answer the questions below by ticking the correct box.

**TOP SECRET DEFENCE REPORT LEAKS OUT**
**PHRASALIAN GOVERNMENT Brought DOWN by ARMS SCANDAL**
**POLICE TO CRACK DOWN ON MOBILE PHONE THIEVES**

**Violence flares up in Hirada**

**SWEDEN PULLS OUT OF TRADE AGREEMENT**

**TERRORIST HIDEAWAY RAIDED BY SPECIAL FORCES**

1. There has been a huge fire in the city of Hirada.  
   - true  
   - false

2. A terrorist hiding place has been attacked by troops.  
   - true  
   - false

3. A government has collapsed because of a scandal.  
   - true  
   - false

4. A top secret report has been published.  
   - true  
   - false

5. Sweden has gained huge benefits from a trade agreement.  
   - true  
   - false

6. The police will take a hard attitude to mobile phone thieves.  
   - true  
   - false

66.2 In this unit there are a number of phrasal verbs which have noun forms. Complete the table below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>noun form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break out (from prison)</td>
<td>crackdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out (war, disease, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break through</td>
<td>hideaway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flare up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look out for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

66.3 Here are some short extracts from newspapers. Complete what you would tell a friend who has not read the extract, using phrasal verb expressions from the opposite page.

1. A bomb exploded in the capital last night, injuring six people.  
   - You: Did you read that? A bomb .................................................................
   - You: Hey did you read that? A bomb .................................................................

2. Riots have erupted between the Northern tribes and the Southern League.  
   - You: Did you read that? Riots .................................................................

3. The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to increase their attacks on military bases.  
   - You: Did you see that? The Phrasalian .................................................................
   - You: Did you read that? The Phrasalian .................................................................

4. The teachers' union has suddenly ended talks with local government officials.  
   - You: Have you heard? The teachers' .................................................................
   - You: The police are advising villagers to .................................................................

5. Villagers have been advised by police to keep their eyes open for anything suspicious.  
   - You: The police are advising villagers to .................................................................

6. Five prisoners have escaped from Gilston High Security Prison.  
   - You: Wow! There's been a .................................................................
Crime

Crime reports in newspapers

Here are some people telling others about things they have just read in the newspaper. Look at the phrasal verbs they use to explain what happened.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECURITY GUARD ATTACKED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| A security guard at an electronics factory was attacked and badly injured by thieves last night. They punched him and kicked him ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>£30K JEWEL ROBBERY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Thieves entered a town-centre jewellery store by force last night and stole £30,000 worth of jewels and watches ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRISONERS ESCAPE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Three prisoners escaped from the Holton Maximum Security Prison this morning. Police are searching a wide area ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCHOOL COMPUTERS STOLEN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Two men persuaded a teacher at Stanbridge School yesterday that they were collecting six computers for repair and maintenance. They took them away, but it later became clear they were thieves ...

Other verbs connected with crime

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hold up sb/sth up</td>
<td>steal money from a building, person or vehicle, by using violence or by threatening to use it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip sb off</td>
<td>warn someone secretly about something that will happen so that they can take action or prevent it from happening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sb up to sth</td>
<td>encourage someone to do something stupid or wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb in</td>
<td>deceive someone or make them believe something that is not true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead on sb</td>
<td>make someone believe something that is not true, especially to make them do something they don’t really want to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let off sb</td>
<td>do not punish someone who but committed a crime or done something wrong, or do not punish someone severely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean on sb</td>
<td>try to make someone do something by threatening or persuading them (informal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are or get mixed up in sth</td>
<td>are or become involved in an illegal or bad activity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gosh! A security guard was beaten up at that electronics factory last night. Terrible!

Did you hear? Somebody broke into that jewellery shop in the town centre last night and stole £30,000 worth of stuff.

Hey! Three prisoners have broken out of Holton Jail. We’d better lock all our doors tonight!

Wow! Did you hear that? Two guys walked off with six computers from a school yesterday in broad daylight!
67.1 Match the beginning of each sentence with its ending.
1 An old man was beaten into the house by a side window.
2 The thieves walked up a local bank yesterday.
3 The burglars broke off with some priceless antique silver.
4 The prisoner managed to break up in his own home yesterday.
5 The thieves held out in broad daylight.

67.2 Describe what each speaker is doing, using one of the phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1 [Image with a man and a woman] Give me all the money in the safe or I’ll shoot.
2 [Image with a man] As this is your first offence, we shall not punish you this time.
3 [Image with a woman] It was Rocky who broke into the bank, Sergeant Jones.
4 [Image with a man] If you don’t give me that confidential report, I’ll tell your boss about your criminal past.

67.3 Complete these dialogues using phrasal verbs.
Mandy: I suspect that young neighbour of ours has got (1) something illegal.
Rose: Yes, I was beginning to think that too. He spends a lot of time with rather suspicious-looking people and I think they may be (2) to doing some dishonest things.
Mandy: Well, I suppose they could (3) him by threatening him if he refuses to help them.
Rose: Or he might just not realise what’s happening. He was always very easily (4) by people.
Mandy: Well, if he does end up in court, I suppose they might (5) lightly as he’s never been involved in crime before.

67.4 Here are some newspaper headlines using noun forms of phrasal verbs presented on the opposite page. Match each headline 1–4 to the first sentence of its article a–d.
1 HOLD-UP AT BANK – $10,000 STOLEN
2 TIP-OFF LEADS TO ARREST
3 TEN BREAK-INS IN ONE NIGHT
4 THIRD BREAKOUT THIS YEAR
a) Oddly, Prison is clearly not as secure as it is supposed to be.
b) Police are extremely grateful to an anonymous caller who rang them last night.
c) Terrified staff were held at gunpoint at the National Bank on Brown Street yesterday.
d) A series of burglaries was reported in Brook Street and adjoining roads last night.
Power and authority

A

The start of a political career

Interviewer: Why did you decide to stand for Parliament?
Politician: Well, I'd been a social worker for a number of years and that had opened my eyes to the huge social divisions in this country. I firmly believed that these were wrong. I wanted to help bring in laws that would lessen the divisions between the rich and the poor. I wanted to do away with taxes for the poorest members of society and to clamp down on rich people who were attempting to avoid paying tax. In short, I wanted to do everything I could to stand up for the principles that I believed in.

1 compete in an election for an official position
2 introduce
3 abolish or get rid of
4 do something to stop or limit a particular activity (noun = clampdown)
5 defend something that you believe is important

B

Life in Parliament

Interviewer: So, once you were elected, how did you go ahead with your plans for social change?
Politician: Well, although some other Members of Parliament from my party backed me up, the more influential ones told me not to be too hasty. I learnt then that our party had entered into an agreement with the country's top business leaders and had promised not to increase taxes for the wealthy for the time being.

Interviewer: Did you stand up to those influential MPs?
Politician: Yes, I told them I was not in Parliament to carry out the wishes of big business.

1 start to do something (noun = go-ahead)
2 permission for something to start
3 supported
4 officially agreed to do something
5 state opinions forcefully and refuse to change your mind or do what others want
6 do something you have been told to do

C

Forming a new party

Interviewer: Did other MPs in your party still stand by you at this point?
Politician: Not all of them, but a few very good people did stick by me and we eventually decided to break away and form our own new party.

Interviewer: So, what happened next?
Politician: Unfortunately, none of us were re-elected at the next election but we have been continuing with our campaigns and hope that at some point in the not too distant future we may be able to carry out our plans to make society a better and fairer place.

1 continue to support
2 continue to support
3 stop being part of a group because you disagree with them or do not want to be controlled by them
4 something that you have said you will do

See if you can find any more phrasal verbs relating to this theme by looking at newspaper articles about political issues.
68.1 Look at these entries from Who's Who in Politics?, a book that gives biographical details about politicians. Complete the entries, using verbs from the box. Write the verbs in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break enter stand carry stick clamp bring stand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


68.2 Correct the mistakes with the phrasal verbs in these political interviews.

1 Interviewer: Will your party now change its mind about its tax plans?
   Politician: No, we are determined to go towards with our proposals.

2 Interviewer: So, what will happen to the present committee structure?
   Politician: We intend to do up with out-of-date committees and to modernise the whole committee structure to make it more efficient.

3 Interviewer: Do you think Ms Reiner should now resign?
   Politician: No, I do not. I and her many supporters are determined to stick on her in the face of these appalling and unfair attacks from the press.

4 Interviewer: Did Mr Carson’s remarks yesterday represent party policy?
   Politician: Yes, the party fully backs Mr Carson across.

68.3 Rewrite each sentence, replacing the underlined word with a phrasal verb expression based on the word in brackets.

1 The People’s Purple Party believes that the monarchy should be abolished. (DOWN)

2 The PPP aims to introduce legislation banning fox hunting. (BRING)

3 The PPP is determined to restrict smoking in public places. (CLAMP)

4 The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party fulfilling its aims (CARRY)

5 He swears he will do all he can to defend the principles the PPP supports. (STAND)

6 The PPP has got the permission to hold a demonstration next week. (GO)
### North America

Here are some phrasal verbs more frequently used in North American varieties of English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>US verb</th>
<th>UK equivalent</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bawl out</td>
<td>tell off</td>
<td>speak angrily to someone</td>
<td>The boss bawled Jack out for for losing the deal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call around</td>
<td>phonocling round</td>
<td>telephone several people, often in order to find out information (in UK English call around usually means to visit someone)</td>
<td>I'll call around and see if I can get a good price.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figure out</td>
<td>sort out or work out</td>
<td>find the solution to a problem or the answer to something</td>
<td>Let's try to figure out how much I owe you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goof off</td>
<td>mess about around</td>
<td>behave stupidly or to waste time doing unimportant things</td>
<td>'m spent too much time goofing off and failed his exams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash up</td>
<td>freshen up</td>
<td>clean your hands and face with soap and water (in UK English wash up means to wash the dishes)</td>
<td>I'm sure you'd like to wash up after your journey.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

US English sometimes adds a particle where UK English would use the verb on its own. For example, an American might say *Wait up!* or *Listen up!* rather than *Wait!* or *Listen!* These are used mainly as imperatives and the up emphasises the idea that the speaker is giving a command. Americans can also visit with friends or meet with colleagues, whereas a British speaker would just visit or meet them.

### Australia

Here are some phrasal verbs which are typical of Australian English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Australian verb</th>
<th>UK equivalent</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barrack for</td>
<td>cheer for</td>
<td>give support to a team or person</td>
<td>I'll be barracking for you in the competition tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belt into</td>
<td>throw yourself into</td>
<td>begin to do something quickly and with a lot of effort</td>
<td>We just belted into the job and got it finished in an hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get into</td>
<td>lay into</td>
<td>criticise</td>
<td>She really got into me. I didn't think I deserved so much criticism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot through</td>
<td>do a runner</td>
<td>leave a place suddenly and often secretly</td>
<td>He's not here any more. He shot through a couple of days ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
69.1 Match the questions on the left with the most likely American English replies on the right.

1. Would you like to wash up?
   - Durnin, I can't figure out why it's not working.

2. What's wrong with the TV?
   - To visit with some friends.

3. Why is she so upset?
   - Durnin, I'll call around a few places.

4. Where will you buy your new TV?
   - Because I goofed off so much.

5. Where's Jo gone?
   - Her parents have just bawled her out.

6. Why d'you think you failed the test?
   - Sure. Where's the restroom?

69.2 Complete these things an Australian might say, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

1. Cheryl is very upset because Lance has __________ just before their wedding.
   - 5.00am

2. Joeline really ___________ Mel for leaving the flat in such a mess.
   - can't wait to

3. Bruce needs to __________ a job without thinking it through first.
   - take time over

4. Have you decided who you're going to ___________ in the game tomorrow?
   - back up against

69.3 Here are some things that British people might say. Write what an American or an Australian might say instead.

1. I expect your grandmother will want to freshen up when she arrives.
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

2. The teacher lied to me for doing such a bad essay.
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

3. Will lost his job for skiving off to go to a concert.
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

4. Susie threw herself into the spring cleaning and the house was soon transformed.
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

5. Could you phone around to find the cheapest place to rent a car?
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

6. I can't work out why he's behaving so oddly.
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

7. He did a runner last month and the police have been looking for him ever since.
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

8. I'll be ready soon. Wait!
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

9. I'm visiting my aunt at the weekend. Would you like to come too?
   - American: ___________
   - Australian: ___________

Hit! Welcome to our Texas home! Would you like to wash up after your long journey?
Many new phrasal verbs are invented in English every year. Some are invented because of social change and the need to develop words to describe new phenomena. These new phrasal verbs are particularly common in informal language and are frequently used by the media and young people so as to sound up-to-date and lively.

### A New phrasal verbs particularly used by the media and young people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be parted out</td>
<td>have had enough of parties because you have been to so many</td>
<td>After a whole week of birthday celebrations, I feel totally parted out!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big up sth or</td>
<td>praise something very highly</td>
<td>He bigged up that new film but when I went to see it I was really disappointed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big sth up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bliss out</td>
<td>become or make someone become totally happy and relaxed</td>
<td>They blissed out on music.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bliss out (often + on)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy into sth</td>
<td>completely believe in a set of ideas</td>
<td>I don’t really buy into all that homeopathic medicine stuff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chill out</td>
<td>relax completely or not allow things to upset you</td>
<td>Chill out! Life’s too short to get so stressed!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex up sth or</td>
<td>make something seem more exciting than it really is</td>
<td>Sports promoters are trying to sex up cricket for the younger generation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex sth up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text back sb or</td>
<td>send a text message in reply</td>
<td>I’ll text you back when my meeting finishes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text sb back</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B More examples of new phrasal verb expressions

Hi, Tanya

How are things with you? Better than with me, I hope. I feel totally stressed-out!

Things started badly when I was late for work today – I needed some money and stopped at a shop where I bought a load of things I didn’t really need but they still refused me cashback!

Then when I got to work I discovered that today wasn’t a dress-down day as I’d thought – and everyone else was looking smart while I’d come in my pants. Then I discovered that all the e-mails I sent yesterday have bounced back to me. I feel like screaming! I’ve been working sooooo hard for sooooo long – I think I’m suffering from burnout –

I wish I had loads of money – I’d go and veg out in the Caribbean.

Penny

1. (adjective) very worried and anxious
2. (noun) money from your bank account that you can get from a shop when you buy goods with a debit card
3. (adjective) used about a day for dressing in less formal clothes than normal
4. didn’t get to their destination and have been sent back
5. (noun) the condition of being ill or tired because you have been working too hard
6. relax by doing nothing (informal)

Listen and look out for new phrasal verbs when you are watching a film or TV or reading a newspaper or magazine.
Exercises

70.1 Complete these sentences with words from the opposite page.
1. This hotel is so awesome, man, I could just ___________ out on this view for the whole weekend.
2. I want to stay at home this evening – I’m tired ___________.
3. The government has been ___________ up a report on economic growth.
4. I don’t ___________ into her theories about global corruption, do you?
5. Sophie had ___________ up her new boyfriend so much that we were all surprised at how ordinary he seemed when we finally met him.
6. I haven’t got any money. Let’s see if we can ___________ some ___________ when we’re at the supermarket.
7. Let’s rent a video and just veg ___________ at home this evening.
8. Nearly one in six teachers suffers from ___________ at some point in their career.

70.2 Answer these questions using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.
1. What will probably happen if you get an e-mail address wrong?
2. What phrasal verb connects vegetables and relaxation?
3. What phrasal verb connects cold weather and relaxation?
4. What might the result be if you work too hard for too long?
5. What is the money called which you can get in a supermarket by paying for more than the cost of the goods you’re buying?
6. Which common adjective has combined with up to form a new phrasal verb?
7. What phrasal verb is based on a noun meaning ecstasy or complete happiness?
8. What do you call a day at work when everyone comes in informal clothes?
9. What could you do if someone texted you?
10. Find three phrasal verbs from the opposite page that are connected with relaxation.
11. Find three words from the opposite page that are connected with modern technology.
12. Find two words from the opposite page that are connected with being tense.

70.3 Write responses to these statements, using phrasal verbs from the opposite page.

Example. Have you got any money with you? Be ___________.
1. Let’s just have a really relaxing holiday, doing nothing much at all!
2. Can you let me know when you get my text message?
3. What do you think about his idea of using aromatherapy in the office?
4. Don’t you want to come to Joe’s birthday party with me?
5. I thought you were going to e-mail me some information about that company?
6. Jane is so tense at work. She really shouldn’t take things so seriously.
7. Why are you wearing jeans to go to work?
8. What did the reviews say about the concert?
Unit 1

1.1 1 I sent off the order last week but the goods haven’t turned up yet.
2 I came across an interesting book in the library. I took down the title. Here it is.
3 We asked some friends around to watch a film, but the video was playing up and it eventually broke down.
4 I brought up this problem at the last meeting. It’s really time to sort out the problem.
5 I wish he’d stop messing us about! He’s put the meeting off three times and now he wants to call it off altogether.

1.2 1 send off = post turn up = arrive
2 send across = find take down = write
3 ask around = invite some play up = not work properly break down = stop working
4 bring up = mention sort out = deal with
5 mess about = cause inconvenience put off = postpone call off = cancel

1.3 Correct
2 Incorrect: the object must come after the particle.
   She looked after the children when their mother was in hospital.
3 Correct
4 Incorrect: this verb is used without an object.
   We are out and had a wonderful meal last night.
5 Incorrect: the object must be human.
   It was a beautiful summer evening so I asked my new colleague out for a drink.

1.4 1 on 2 with 3 against 4 with 5 with

Unit 2

2.1 1 broke 2 cut 3 get 4 keep 5 pick 6 turn

2.2 The particle could be put in a different position in sentences 2 and 6:
1 The heavy snow blocked the roads and cut off the farm completely.
6 This is a really stupid programme. Please turn off the TV.

2.3 1 Abstract Go against here means oppose or defy.
2 Concrete Cut out here means use scissors to remove the ad from the paper or magazine.
3 Abstract Cut out here means stopped running.
4 Abstract Cut down here means stopped working altogether.
5 Abstract Turned up here means arrived.
6 Concrete Dress up here means dress in formal clothes or your best clothes.
7 Abstract Went through here means experienced

2.4 1 They just brushed aside my complaints; it made me very angry. Or They just brushed my complaints aside.
2 I fell for his story about having lost all his money. How stupid I was!
3 I couldn’t make out what he was saying with all the noise.
4 Could you chase up Janet’s report? She promised it last week but I haven’t seen it yet.
5 Or Could you chase Janet’s report up?
6 If you are phoning from outside the country, leave out the first zero in the city code.
7 Or ... leave the first zero in the city code out.
2.5 1 The government has issued a statement condemning the recent protests.
2 The union accepted the new pay deal and cancelled the strike.
3 The number of people not owning a TV set nowadays has declined dramatically.
4 There was a disturbance in Blackmoor Prison yesterday and three prisoners escaped.
5 Could you organise lunch for our visitors? There will be four of them.

Unit 3

3.1 1 The speaker went with her brothers.
2 No, she didn’t go into Di’s house.
3 Mark was in a higher position.
4 The speaker went to the Richardson’s house.
5 round

3.3 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b

3.3 Incorrect. The object must come between the verb and the particle:
1 I have three important meetings or tomorrow.
2 Correct
3 Incorrect. The object must come between the verb and the particle:
Sue was only having her sisters on when she told them she was planning to become a model.
4 Incorrect. This meaning of the phrasal verb have on is never used in the continuous form:
I have a lot of work on today.
5 Correct
6 Incorrect. The object must come before the particle because it is a pronoun:
Ruth was wearing new jeans this morning and she had them on yesterday.

3.4 1 Can you move over to make room for your sister?
2 When Jill finished her essay, she asked Harry to read it over.
3 Jim has invited me back to his house tomorrow.
4 Paul was only having his parents on when he told them he’d failed his driving test.
5 What do you have on tomorrow?
6 Sue had the light on in her bedroom, so I knew she was at home.
Or Sue had on the light in her bedroom, so I knew she was at home.

Unit 4

4.1 phrasal verb verb + particle noun
show off show-off
warm up warm-up
hold on none
hide out hideout
turn over turnover
tear down none
4.2 1 pile-up 2 cutbacks 3 outcry 4 bystanders
5 breakthrough
4.3 1 getaway 2 off-putting 3 throwaway 4 outgoing
5 bygone
4.4 1 get away 2 put off 3 throw away 4 go out 5 go by
4.5 1 I was looking for a way to turn off the photocopier – There's the on/off switch.
2 Have your heard about the scandal in the office? – Mm, amazing goings-on!
3 The economy's not doing so well these days. – Yes, there's been a downturn.
4 A database can organise all the information you type into it. – Yes, but I don't understand the input.
5 You have to consider how much you spend each month. – I know, I need to watch my outgoings.

Unit 5

5.1 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 c 6 b
5.2 1 a) I put my feet in a puddle of water and my feet are very wet now.
   b) She intervened or became involved to stop the argument from becoming more serious.
   The connection between the meanings is the sense of going into the middle of something.
2 a) This programme is rubbish. I wish you'd turn off the TV.
   b) The lecture so boring that I stopped paying attention.
   The connection between the meanings is the sense of a break in continuity.
3 a) There's a hole in my bag. I think my pen must have fallen from the bag onto the ground or floor.
   b) He stopped going to college before the end of his course and became a mechanic.
   The connection between the meanings is the sense of leaving a place or environment.
4 a) We fixed the boxes to the roof of the car by using ropes.
   b) Mark dreams of travelling but he doesn't feel free to do it because he is trapped by his family and work responsibilities.
   The connection between the meanings is the sense of being unable to move or being restricted.

5.3 1 What are you really trying to say? I wish you would say exactly what you mean!
2 The teacher did all she could to repeat the vocabulary so frequently that her pupils knew it well before the exam.
3 The old education system used to remove the best pupils and teach them in separate schools.
4 The noise of the children's music made it impossible for me to hear the television.
5.4 Suggested answer:
As the rain didn't stop, the football game was cancelled. So the team began discussing its strategy for the next match instead. We didn't leave the clubhouse until the cleaners arrived in the evening.

Unit 6

6.1 1 apart 5 along
2 out 6 out
3 around/round 7 out
4 out
6.2 Suggested answers:
1 Ken: Really? How did that come about?
2 Ivan: Huh! Do you think it will ever come off?
3 Fran: When do you think you'll come to a decision?
4 Ulla: Yes, I was intending to, but right at the last minute something came up.

6.3

SCORPIO
You may come up against a few problems at work today, but don't worry, they're only temporary, and a new job opportunity will come up which could change your life. The name of an old friend comes up in conversation, bringing back powerful memories.

TAURUS
You will come across someone who seems to share the same views as you, but be careful, they are not what they seem to be. Don't forget that, in the end, true love comes down to finding someone you can trust.

Unit 7

7.1 1 b  2 c  3 d  4 b  5 a  6 a  7 d

7.2 Suggested answers:
1 How do you and Joe get on? – We're great friends.
2 What exactly are you getting at? – Let me put it another way for you.
3 How do you get by on a student grant? – I manage somehow, though it isn't easy.
4 How did you get so behind? – I just wasn't organised enough.
5 When are you going to get round to it? – Soon, I promise.
6 Shall we get together this evening? – Sure, that would be nice.
7 Will you manage to get away soon? – I certainly hope so.

7.3 1 I've been planning to sort out my files but I haven't got around/round to it yet,
2 I can't get over how much money they spent on their New Year's party.
3 Don't try to get away with not paying your train fare – an inspector might come on and want to see your ticket,
4 The teachers in the school often get together after work on Fridays in a café near the school.
5 They got around/round the problem of offending anyone and just invited all their friends to the wedding.
6 I usually find it quite hard to understand what Professor Macnott is getting at in his lectures.
7 I hope I can get away with not sending any Christmas cards this year.
8 Emily has got terribly/very behind with her thesis.
Unit 8

8.1 1 through 2 off 3 through 4 without 5 on 6 about

8.2 Suggested answers:
1. I'm thinking of going in for the New York Marathon next year.
2. My father went through some difficult times in his life.
3. Unemployment and high crime levels often go together.
4. He decided to go through with the operation even though there were risks.
5. I refused to go along with their decision to close the youth club.
6. I didn't realise how late it was and I went on studying till after midnight.
7. We had to go without hot water for 24 hours while they were repairing the pipes.
8. Do you think I should go in for the advanced level exam? It might be too difficult.
9. She just went off without saying goodbye. I wonder if I offended her?
10. What was going on in the staffroom at lunchtime? I heard someone shouting.

8.3 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 c

Unit 9

9.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b

9.2 1 forward
2 around/round (out is also possible here)
3 after
4 ahead or forward
5 down
6 as (over is also possible here)

9.3 A smaller box with the phrase: 

9.4 1 find the new words in a dictionary
2 visited an old friend who I hadn't seen for a long time (when you go to the town or country where that person lives)
3 the situation is improving
4 quickly examined the report
5 examined the report (rather more carefully than looking over it)
6 investigating the murder

Unit 10

10.1 1 Pete 2 Jane 3 Drew 4 Lars 5 Melanie

10.2 1 As soon as we had checked in at the hotel, we made straight for the beach.
2 She made up some story about the bus being late, but I'm sure she just overslept.

150 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
3 Nobody could make out why the camera was not working properly. (The sentence is now in the active voice because make out cannot be used in the passive.)
4 Harry is very good at making up stories for the children; they love his tales.
5 Can you make out what that white thing on the horizon is? (Verb and particle cannot be separated.)
6 The report is made up of three sentences. (In this sense of make up the verb and particle cannot be separated.)

Unit 11

11.1
1 I like sleeping in tents but I don't like putting them up. (Where the object is a pronoun, it must go before the particle.)
2 Correct.
3 We put a new dishwasher in last week. It's wonderful. Or We put in a new dishwasher last week. It's wonderful.
4 Correct.
5 That light is too strong. Shall we put it out? (When the object is a pronoun, it must go before the particle.)

11.2
1 up 2 on 3 in 4 off 5 out 6 onto or on to

11.3 Suggested answers:
1 Could you put the light out please. You don't need them on. Or Could you put out the light ... 
2 They're putting up some new buildings near the railway station. Or They're putting some new buildings up ...
3 The Boy Scouts put their tent up very quickly and then started unpacking their things. Or The Boy Scouts put their tent up ...
4 Could we possibly put our meeting back to 10 o'clock? Or Could we possibly put back our meeting ...
5 When we moved into our new house we decided to put in a new, more attractive fireplace. Or ... we decided to put a new, more attractive fireplace in.
6 Can you put that CD on, please. I work better with music in the background.

11.4
1 b 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 c

Unit 12

12.1 I bought a new jacket but it had a mark on it so I took it back.
The shop assistant took me aside and told me that if I was prepared to keep the jacket she would take away ten per cent. I didn't really take in what she was saying at first, but once I understood, I decided to take her over on the offer.

12.2
1 Kim: OK, OK. Sorry, I shouldn't have said it. I take it back. Or I take back what I said.
2 Clare: Yes, she's really taken to c. She's so taken up with it that she's stopped going to the swimming pool.
3 Len: Well, I'm not surprised! I warned you not to take it apart in the first place, not take apart-it

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 151
4 Miriam: Well, why don’t you take up golf? Or ... take golf up?
5 Paul: It’s what you get when you take £15 away from £45. Or It’s what you get when you take away £15 from £45.
6 Terry: Yes, reaching 28 hours a week really takes it out of me.
7 Kersty: Yes, he just took off without even saying goodbye.

Unit 13

13.1 Possible answers:
1 She needs to tidy up the kitchen.
2 She needs to sweep up the food the child has dropped on the floor. Or She needs to sweep up the rubbish from the floor.
3 She must hang up the coat.
4 Toys are jumbled up on the floor.
5 When she has cleared everything up, she might feel tired but happy.

13.2 turned or showed
2 liven
3 chop
4 shows or turns
5 opened

13.3 b 2 a or d 3 c 4 a or b 5 c 6 d 7 b or d 8 b

13.4 1 The *up* can be left out of the following sentences:
I spent all morning yesterday clearing (*up*) my study.
After that I tried to tidy (*up*) my bedroom.
There were dirty clothes all jumbled (*up*) in a pile on the floor.
Then I discovered the washtub was clogged (*up*) in the bathroom, so I had to clear that.
By that time I’d used (*up*) all my energy ...
Eat (*up*) your vegetables, children!
Drink (*up*) your juice!
Paul’s used (*up*) all the milk.
She’s just opened (*up*) a restaurant serving exotic food from different countries.
No, she has a business partner and they divide (*up*) the work – and the profits!
She spends half the day chopping (*up*) food and cleaning the kitchen.

In the other example sentences on the opposite page the *up* is essential.

2 In the sentences where the word *up* is not essential, using it seems to add a meaning of:
- either something being done completely (tidy up, clear up, jumble up, clog up, eat up, drink up, use up),
- or something being made into lots of small pieces (divide up, chop up). This meaning can be seen in verbs such as smash up, cut up, tear up.

Unit 14

14.1 I’ll show you out, if you like.
2 For some reason my name was left out of the guest list.
3 I’ve locked myself out of my car.
4 He can see/show himself out – there’s no need to take him there.
5 She cut out pictures of her pop idol from the music magazines.
6 The security guard let us out of the building site.
14.2 1 lost 2 try 3 help 4 locked 5 cut 6 show or see, etc.

14.3 1 He's looked himself out of his car. 2 She's left out the letter E. Or She's left the letter E out. 3 The DVD of Star Lords video is coming out soon. Or Star Lords is coming out on DVD soon.

14.4 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

Unit 15

15.1 1 sold 2 broke 3 clear or slip or run (Clear suggests that the speaker is more annoyed.) 4 see 5 head or slip (Slip emphasises the idea of leaving discreetly. Clear would sound too abrupt and informal in this context.) 6 dozed 7 send 8 lift or lifting

15.2 1 It won't take her long to run off the letters you asked her to do. 2 I often doze off in boring lectures. 3 Let's try and slip off before the others wake up. 4 In the middle of a long speech the actor suddenly broke off and ran off the stage. 5 I've sent all the students' exam results off. Or I've sent off all the students' exam results. 6 The school disco has put her off discs in general. Or The school disco has turned her off discs in general. 7 Tell that boy in our front garden to clear off - he's annoying the dog. 8 Fortunately, he laughed off the criticism of his acting. Or He laughed the criticism of his acting off.

15.3 Author's answers:
1 I think I'd probably just laugh it off. 2 I'd be most likely to doze off in front of a political discussion. 3 My husband, son and dog usually see me off if I go on a journey on my own. 4 I can usually run off an English essay quickly as long as the subject is not too difficult. 5 A lecturer might break off in the middle of a talk if someone raised their hand to ask a question. 6 If you plan to slip off during a party, you're intending to go quietly without letting anyone know that you have gone. 7 If someone tells some children to 'clear off', they probably feel cross or annoyed with them. 8 I might be put off eating my dinner if I saw a hair on the plate.
15.4 1 I'm going to see James off at the airport tomorrow. Or I'm going to see off James at the airport tomorrow.
2 I've just sent off a letter to Pauline. Or I've sent a letter to Pauline off.
3 The rocket is due to lift off tomorrow at noon. (Note that there is also a noun lift-off: the lift-off is due at noon tomorrow.)
4 I hope I've managed to turn him off the idea of redecorating the house. Or I hope I've managed to put him off the idea of redecorating the house.
5 I dozed off when all the others went off to play tennis.
6 We're planning to head off in the early evening.

Unit 16

16.1 1 I read the gardening article you gave me then passed it on to a friend who's also interested in plants.
2 Do you think she's really angry, or do you think she's just putting it on?
3 He looks very pale and tired. Something is clearly weighing on/upon him.
4 Or something is clearly weighing on/upon his mind.
5 It's a lovely jacket. Try it on.
6 I'm going to keep on working until I've finished this report.
7 You can rely/depend/count on/upon Brian.

16.2 1 False, because keep on means to continue to do something, and Anwar has decided to sell Oscar the new tomorrow.
2 False, because take in means to reduce the width of a piece of clothing, and Alice's skirt was too loose.
3 True
4 True
5 False, because count on means rely on, and Bob has been able to rely on his parents' support.
6 True

16.3 1 Hey, that man just pushed in — that taxi should have been ours!
2 Mary's bad news has been weighing on my mind all day.
3 I need time for the news to sink in.
4 I couldn't leave the room because someone had locked me in. (You are locked out of a room if you cannot get in.)
5 Phrasal verbs may seem hard but you must keep on trying.
6 You'll never guess who called in at the office today?

Follow up
Possible answers:
pass on = to die
e.g. I'm so sorry to hear that your dad has passed on.
take in = to let someone stay in your house
e.g. She took me in for a month while the building work was done on my house.
rub sth in (informal) = to talk to someone about something which you know they want to forget because they feel bad about it
e.g. I know I shouldn't have failed the exams, but there's no need to keep rubbing it in.
Unit 17

17.1 1 We know that Jamie's luggage is heavy and/or that there is a lot of it.
2 Yes, but she's trying to eat less chocolate than she used to. Though she would probably be quite happy if she could cut it out totally. [stop eating it completely]
3 He wrote it rather than taped it.
4 No, it has closed permanently, not just for the evening.
5 Perhaps they did it because the bushes were so big that they were blocking the light or blocking the path.

17.2 1 shut 2 cut 3 hand 4 chopped 5 keep 6 go

17.3 1 Read through, look through and go through are all possible. Using through perhaps suggests more thoroughness than over which can be quite superficial. However, the difference is very slight.
2 They all share an idea of change or of moving from one state or time to another: stay over = staying from one day to the next
get over = change from feeling bad to feeling better
fall over = change from a vertical to a horizontal position
3 a) bitaviness which causes difficulty
b) put on paper
4 a) communicating or expressing clearly
b) move to make more room for someone else
c) examine to make sure they are correct
d) hit it with their foot so that it spills
e) flow over the side of the pan

Unit 18

18.1 1 mess about(a)round behave stupidly or waste time
2 hang about(a)round spend time somewhere not doing very much
3 lie about(a)round lie down doing very little
4 sit about(a)round spend time sitting down and doing very little
5 laze about(a)round relax, enjoy yourself and do very little

18.2 1 lies or lazes 2 hanging 3 sitting 4 laziness or lying 5 messing

18.3 Suggested answers:
1 Do you want to wait/stick around after the meeting? I finish work at 5 p.m. and I could show/take you (a)round the old town.
2 Nothing much happened at the demonstration. We just stood about(a)round and held our banners up.
3 They spend most weekends just hanging/messing about(a)round in their boat; they don't really sail it seriously.
4 On my first day, the boss showed/took me (a)round the workshop and introduced me to various people I'd be working with.
5 At the drinks party people were just milling about(a)round hoping to find someone they knew.
6 Look, I'm sorry, I don't want to mess you about/around, but I wonder if we could postpone our meeting till next week?
18.4 1 I’ve got to leave now, but I’ll see you somewhere or other.
2 Don’t tell me what to do.
3 I’m just looking to see what you have.
4 My suitcase got a bit damaged on the plane.
5 He told the kids to stop behaving so badly.

Unit 19

19.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 d 6 e

19.2 1 sent 5 put
2 lives 6 could do
3 go 7 stick
4 couldn’t ask 8 catching

19.3 1 go, with
2 call for
3 dying for
4 deal with
5 catch up with

19.4 1 I couldn’t put up with such noisy neighbours as yours.
2 It’s been such a busy week. I’m dying for the weekend.
3 Jean’s shoes go perfectly with her handbag.
4 All the students at his university were rooting for Kyle in the golf championship.
5 I couldn’t ask for a better job.
6 Sniff... lives for her grandson.

Unit 20

20.1 Possible answers:
1 Let me take you through the way we do things here.
2 Don’t worry, I saw through Leo the first moment I met him.
3 I’m so sorry. I set my alarm but slept through it.
4 Could you go through these figures and see if you can find any mistakes?
5 You don’t need to read it in detail. Just flick/flip/look through it.
6 Well, she has lived through some terrible things over the last few years.

20.2 1 take or took, take 4 bite
2 bite 5 go
3 send 6 answer

20.3 Suggested answers:
1 Joe rang while you were out. Please could you call/phoner something back.
   (not call/phoner him back)
2 I don’t like these trousers I bought today. I think I’ll take them back.
   (not take back them)
3 Harry missed his train this morning because he slept through his alarm. (not he slept his
   alarm through)
4 Ellen isn’t really reading the magazine; she’s just flicking/flip through it.
   (not flicking/flip through)
5 I wanted to tell her how upset I was but I managed to bite it back. (not bite back it)
Unit 21

21.1 At the supermarket yesterday Julia ran into Martin.
2 Kim is getting over his broken heart by throwing himself into his studies.
3 When she saw me dressed up as a pirate she burst into laughter.
4 He doesn't think before he speaks so don't read too much into his words.
5 In your essay you should have gone more fully into the causes of the war.
6 We were disagreeing about the film and then Jo entered into the argument.
7 The police are doing all they can to look into what happened.

21.2 running away
2 tidy away or pack away
3 stay away from
4 locked herself away
5 sent away for
6 treat yourself away

21.3 Suggested answers:
1 I was very surprised when Helen burst into tears/laughter/song.
2 It makes sense to stay away from dangerous parts of town at night.
3 My best friend always throws himself into everything he does.
4 Sometimes I'd really like to run away from all my problems and go and live on an island.
5 I find this job so stressful. I really should look into other possible careers.
6 When I went to the town centre last week I ran into my old headmistress.
7 Before moving house I spent weeks packing away all my personal belongings.
8 Whenever visitors are coming, I usually tidy away anything that is lying around.

21.4 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

21.5 Suggested answers:
A number of the phrasal verbs with into are connected with going into something in detail: look into sth, read sth into sth, go into sth, throw yourself into sth.
Other phrasal verbs with into are connected with starting something: burst into sth, enter into sth, launch into sth.
Others are connected with meeting someone or something: run into sth/ sb, bump into sb/ sb, bang into sth.
The phrasal verbs with away are all connected with separation, keeping something at a distance or putting something in a separate place.

Unit 22

22.1 pressed 4 bring, fit
2 run 5 press
3 clock, clock 6 take

22.2 Suggested questions:
1 What do you usually do at weekends? Or How do you spend your evenings?
2 How did he fail the exam? Or Why did he drop out of the course?
3 How long have you known him/her?
4 Is that girl a friend of yours?
5 Why do you always carry a personal stereo? Or Why have you got your portable chess game with you?
6 Shall we leave now?

22.3 1 We had to wait an hour for the next train, so we went for a walk to while away the time.
2 A young French woman latched on to me at the party last night. I think she wanted to practise her English.
3 I clock on at 7.30 a.m. every morning. Or I clock on at work at 7.30 a.m. every morning.
4 We have to finish this job by six o’clock. We’d better press on with it.
5 I just don’t know how we’re going to fit three meetings in before the summer break. Or I just don’t know how we’re going to fit in three meetings before the summer break.

Unit 23

23.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 a

23.2 1 In (a) the lecture simply went on for longer than expected. In (b) the person found it slow and boring.
2 In (a) John delayed us whereas in (b) he made us move or work faster.
3 In (a) the song reminds the speaker of their childhood whereas in (b) the speaker simply says that the song was written when he was a child.
4 In (a) the children were walking much more quickly than the speaker whereas in (b) the speaker was trying to make the children walk faster.

23.3 1 Time seems to pass more quickly as you get older.
2 Music and smells have great powers to remind you of the past.
3 Mr. Jones looks or behaves like people used to look or behave in the past; in other words, he is very old-fashioned in some way.
4 We should forget what happened in the past. (The implication is that there have been problems, arguments or conflicts in the past, but that you now want to make peace.)
5 You never know what the future holds for you.

23.4 Suggested answers:
1 The old oil lamps in my grandfather’s house looked like leftovers from a bygone era.
2 The smell of chalk always takes me back to my schooldays.
3 There was a hold-up on the motorway because of an accident.
4 Sometimes, if the textbook is boring, the lesson seems to drag on.
5 We can never know what lies ahead.
6 There are some leftover pizzas from the party. Would you like one?

Unit 24

24.1 Suggested answers:
1 The fields stretch away to the horizon.
2 The house is tucked away in the forest.
3 There are small houses spread out over the landscape.
4 The house on the island is cut off from the mainland.
5 The room opens onto a balcony.
24.2 1 stay in
2 stay out
3 leave something behind
4 stay behind or stay on
5 brighten up
6 stay on
7 call back

24.3 1 I left my floppy disk behind at the computer class. I'll have to go back and see if it's still in the machine.
2 When you were a teenager, did your parents allow you to stay out late?
3 Shop assistant: I'm afraid your photographs aren't ready yet. It will be another couple of hours.
Customer: Okay, I'll call back tomorrow.
4 We've decided to paint the kitchen to brighten it up a bit. It's so gloomy and dull at the moment.
5 I'm really tired. I think I'll stay in tonight and not go to the party after all, sorry.
6 The teacher asked the naughty boy to stay behind after the lesson.
7 We loved the resort so much we decided to stay on another week, even though our friends had gone home.

Unit 25

25.1 1 brings back 3 lies behind 5 sparked off
2 spring from 4 stir up 6 set, off

25.2 1 off 3 bring 5 ruled 7 stir
2 set 4 off 6 off 8 pay

25.3 1 fireworks 4 memories
2 suspects 5 reforms
3 violence 6 feelings

25.4 1 stir up 5 sparked off or triggered off
2 pay him back 5 ruled out
3 triggered off or sparked off 6 sprang from

Unit 26

26.1 1 picked up or gone up 2 heating up 3 going up 4 filling up

26.2 1 woke up 2 looking up

26.3

```
  P A T I O
  C H A N G E O Y E R
  A T E N
  S T U C K
  E T L E B L O W
```

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 159
26.6 1 The changeover to the new accounting system has caused endless problems.
2 There was a lot of trouble in the office last month, but it’s all blown over now and
things are back to normal.
3 Shall I heat up that pizza for you? I expect it’s gone cold by now.
4 All these old telephones will be phased out over the next year and we’ll get new, digital ones.

Unit 27

27.1 1 fall through 4 take off or catch on
2 take over 5 bring off or pull off
3 downfall 6 come off

27.2 1 S 4 $ 7 S
2 S 5 S 8 F
3 F or S* 6 S 9 S
*If you are muddling through, you are managing, even if not very well, so it could be S as
well as F.

27.3 History muddle through
Maths build on
English catch up
Geography stay ahead
Physics pay off

27.4 Suggested answers:
1 Mina has walked into a job in London.
2 Jim’s hard work eventually paid off.
3 The company is hoping to pull off an important deal this week.
4 Rachel never expected her singing career to take off so quickly.
5 The project may well fall through because of a lack of funds.
6 Teri finds it hard to keep up with the other kids in her class.
7 The new design of mobile phone has caught on almost overnight.
8 Top software companies are finding it increasingly difficult to stay ahead (of their
competitors).

Unit 28

28.1 1 started, outset, packed
2 set, polish or finish, broke, finish or polish
3 give, cut, fiddled
4 drying, call

28.2 Author’s answers:
1 I should set about filling in my annual tax forms.
2 I was planning on going to Spain at New Year, but had to call off the trip because
I was ill.
3 Playing the guitar helps me to wind down.
4 I eat too much chocolate and should cut down on that.
5 I once started tennis lessons but gave them up after a few weeks.
Follow up

Possible answers:

start on sth = to begin to deal with something

start over (American English) = to start doing something from the beginning because you did not do it well the first time

start up = to start to work (of a vehicle or engine)

Unit 29

29.1 1 It is probably on a high shelf or in a high cupboard.
2 No, she’s only gone for a short time, or at least that is what the speaker is implying.
3 He has to move closer to someone.
4 Sonia has to move more because she has to actually change seats rather than just move a little bit further along.
5 No, the speaker expects you to use your hands to tear it.
6 She’s probably about to go outside because she is putting her coat on.

29.2 1 The children helped me to wrap up the parcel. Or The children helped me to wrap the parcel up.
2 Can you tie up Billy’s shoe laces for him? Or Can you tie Billy’s shoe laces up for him?
3 Pick up the ball at once. Or Pick the ball up at once.
4 Slow down – it’s beginning to snow.
5 Jill loves blowing up balloons! Or Jill loves blowing balloons up.

29.3 Suggested answers:

1 The tree has fallen down.
2 She’s reaching out to put money in the machine.
3 He’s blowing up a balloon. Or He’s blowing a balloon up.
4 He’s picking up a toy car. Or He’s picking a toy car up.
5 He’s tearing up a photo. Or He’s tearing a photo up.
6 She’s wrapping up a present. Or She’s wrapping a present up.

29.4 I slowed 2 reached 3 pop 4 blow

Unit 30

30.1 stamp 2 root 3 falling 4 screwed or tore 5 knocked

30.2 I tear apart The lions are tearing a dead animal apart. Or The lions are tearing apart a dead animal.
2 put out The firefighters are putting out a fire. Or The firefighters are putting a fire out.
3 pull down or tear down He is pulling/tearing the building down. Or He is pulling/tearing down the building.

30.3 1 Gisela: Yes, well, it was a bit of a setback but I’ve applied for a different grant, and hope I’ll get that.
2 Dan: Well, my parents have lent me some money to see me through while I’m studying.
   Note that: ‘see through me’ is not possible here. ‘See through somebody’ means to become aware that they are deceiving you; see Unit 20.
3 Hilda: Yes, but they are fighting back now and their union is much stronger.
4 Bob: Oh yes, he bent over backwards to help me.
5 Eric: Yes, I made an innocent comment and she just turned on me. Note that ‘turned me on’ is not possible here. ‘Turn somebody on’ means to excite them; see Unit 52.
6 Gareth: OK, don’t worry, I’ll see to it.

Unit 31
31.1 1 Mandy 2 Paula 3 Dennis and Anne 4 Ali
31.2 1 turn down 2 ordering, about or around 3 leave, aside 4 get on to 5 turn to
6 bubbling over 7 deal with 8 keep to 9 pass on

31.3 1 speak up = to speak more loudly
2 get through to someone = to make someone understand
3 speak up = to publicly express your opinions about something or someone, especially in order to support them
4 get across something or get something across = to successfully communicate an idea to other people
5 butt in (informal) = to interrupt a conversation or discussion, often stopping someone who is talking
6 dry up = to stop speaking because you forget what to say next

Unit 32
32.1 1 freshen up
2 dress up
3 (to) do up or (to) do my dress up
4 wrap up, put on or put a scarf on
32.2 1 I don’t want to wear my new jacket tonight. You can put it on if you like.
2 Although the house looked rundown from the outside, it was very smart/clean/well-maintained inside.
3 If you’re going out in the snow, make sure you wrap up well.
4 Do you think this scarf and coat go together OK?
5 He hates the way his ears stick out.
6 It takes me a long time to get the kids ready in the morning because Sammy and Lisa can’t do up their own shoes yet.
7 Bill and his brother are so alike – I can’t tell one from the other.
8 It’s a very formal party, so you need to/you should dress up.
32.3 1 rundown 2 in 3 stands* 4 stick 5 set
*sticks is also possible but sounds less formal.
32.4 1 There are many examples.
2 The speaker thinks the performance was special, and probably better than the performances of the other actors in the film.
3 Jan’s writing is better.
4 Yes, it does.
5 The speaker thinks this will improve the series.

162 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Unit 33

33.1 1 If a performance is booked up, you can’t get tickets for it.
2 If people are said to pour in (a place), you know that there are a lot of people.
3 If people cram into a room, the room is then very crowded.
4 Events like poetry readings or poetry competitions might be put on to tie in with National Poetry Week.
5 A comedian is more likely to send up politicians than post office workers.
6 An actor would need someone to stand in for them if they lost their voice or were sick.

33.2 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 d 5 e 6 f

33.3 1 called off 4 taking off or sending up*
2 standing in 5 packed out
3 put on 6 tie in

*If the imitation is very humorous, then send up is more appropriate.

33.6 1 putting on 5 sending up
2 ties in 6 taking off or sending up
3 was booked up 7 walked out
4 cram into 8 put off

Unit 34

34.1 1 I know, but I’m sure everything will turn out all right in the end.
2 I must have mixed/muddled them up. Sorry.
3 I’ve ran up against that problem too.
4 OK, I’ll see if I can get out of my trip to London.
5 I wouldn’t bank on it.
6 I know, but try to rise above it.

34.2 1 revolves 2 mix-up 3 back 4 crop 5 turns

34.3 Suggested answers:
1 hot up 4 calmed down
2 caught up 5 to back off
3 were thrown together 6 bank on his help

Unit 35

35.1 1 track down 3 turns to 5 come under
2 drawn on/upon 4 points out 6 check up on

35.2 Hannah and Bill were playing a game. Hannah had thought of a football star and Bill was trying to find out who it was. He turned to his mother but she pointed out that she knew absolutely nothing about football. He would have to try to track down himself (or track down the answer himself) and to watch out for any clues that Hannah might deliberately give. After ten minutes Bill still hadn’t latched on so he gave up and Hannah told him the answer: Ronaldo.

35.3 Suggested answers:
1 You might check up on a person, facts or something you’ve been told.
2 You might point out an important fact, a mistake or a connection between two things.
3 Someone might find out some information, a secret or someone’s date of birth.
4 You might take in something you're told, good or bad news, or the implications of a situation.
5 A secret, a rude remark or a taboo word might slip out.

35.4 1 make someone notice something by showing it with your finger
2 try to see
3 find by using physical senses
4 leave quickly and quietly
5 turn your body to face

Unit 36

36.1 1 c 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 b

36.2 It's time you sorted yourself out. You're 23 now and you still haven't got a job!
You've got to face up to reality. It's about time you realised that the secret of success lies in taking positive action. Over the next couple of days, I will expect you to come up with a few ideas about how you're going to improve your situation, or else you can go and live somewhere else. Why don't you go and see about that job Uncle Herbert offered you at his factory? I've offered to help talk things over with you, but you never seem to want my help. Yet you don't deal with things yourself. Sometimes I think you're just a waste of space!

36.3 it's just dawned on me: I've suddenly realised or understood something
rules out: makes something impossible or unsuitable
the answer jumps out at you: the answer can immediately be seen
work through things: deal with a problem by talking about it in detail
sort things out: make a decision by discussing it with someone else or thinking about it carefully

Unit 37

37.1 1 over or through 2 weigh 3 by 4 ahead 5 think 6 sleep

37.2 Possible answers:
1 I probably would run an important decision by my parents first, especially one concerning my professional life.
2 I usually try to make myself sleep on it first as things often seem better after a good night's sleep.
3 I'd prefer to do without a car. My holidays are really important to me.
4 When planning ahead for their retirement, people might contribute to a pension or they might try to save money regularly.
5 People might chicken out of giving a speech, or going paragliding, or asking someone to go out with them on a date.

37.3 Suggested answers:
1 We should allow for the fact that he is still only young. (not We should allow the fact that he is still young.)
2 I really can't help you as I have a lot of things on today. (not I have so many things on today.)
3 He wants to opt out of art classes next year so he can do extra music. (not He wants to opt out of art classes out ...)
4 We didn't bargain for Mark turning up at the party with a lot of his friends. (not We didn't bargain for Mark turning up)
5 My son is set against going to university. (not My son is set going to university against.)
6 I could do without people coming for dinner this evening. (not I could do people without ...)

37.4 1 I was going to do the parachute jump but I chickened out in the end.
2 I have a lot of things on this weekend.
3 In judging her work, you should really allow for her inexperience.
4 If we buy the flat, we'll have to do without holidays for a few years.
5 Let's run our plan by Sarah before we make our final decision.
6 I could do without having to go to a conference this weekend.
7 In deciding how much holiday money we need, we should allow for the fact that food is very expensive there.

Unit 38

38.1 1 spoken 2 stick 3 back 4 outcry 5 stay 6 give

38.2 Suggested answers:
1 Yes, he backed him up. (not He backed up him.)
2 Yes, it seems they're fallen out.
3 Yes, she always stick her up for her. (not Yes, she always sticks her up for.)
4 Yes, I agree. I think we should back out.
5 Yes, she's always putting him down. (not Yes, she's always putting down him.)
6 No, we shouldn't hold it against her. (not No, we shouldn't hold against her.)
7 Or Yes, I think it's really getting to her. (not Yes, I think it's really getting to her.)

39.3 1 give in or back down 2 fallen out 4 stuck together
3 back out

5 getting to

Unit 39

39.1 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b

39.2 presenting an opinion or trying to persuade successfully persuading people's reactions to persuasion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put across/over</th>
<th>talk around/round</th>
<th>fall for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put forward</td>
<td>bring round</td>
<td>brush aside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put sth to sb</td>
<td>rope in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call for</td>
<td>have on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press for</td>
<td>talk into</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>talk out of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
39.3 1. She didn’t take it seriously and refused to think about it seriously.
2. We don’t know, but we know that it’s not the USA because she was just teasing Derek.
3. No, they didn’t have much choice in the matter.
4. We know she wasn’t robbed and that she isn’t always truthful because she was trying to
   trick Harry by inventing the story.
5. Yes, it does want reform.

39.4 1. pressing for or calling for 4. call for or press for
2. bring; around/round or 5. rope in
   talk; around/round 6. talk; into
3. putting forward

Unit 40

40.1 stand out and outstanding
   An outstanding person is someone who stands out or is noticeable because of special,
   positive characteristics.
   show off and a show-off
   A show-off is a person who shows off or tries to impress others in an annoying way.
   screw up and screwed-up
   If a person is screwed-up, then in some way their experiences in life have screwed up or
   damaged their personality or their state of mind, making them unhappy or confused.


40.3 Suggested answers:
1. Dan won the prize as his short story stood out (as the best). Or Dan won the prize as
   his short story stood out from all the others.
2. Molly got the sack because her work just didn’t measure up.
3. What on earth does Gemma think she’s playing at – she’s behaving so oddly?
4. I wish Ed wouldn’t show off all the time! Or I wish Ed wasn’t/weren’t such a show-off.
5. If you screw up again, you’ll lose your job.
6. I know I was stupid but please don’t rub it in.
7. Joe’s father laid into him for scratching his new car.
8. Why does everyone always pick on me?

Unit 41

41.1 Suggested answers:
   a) Mind out!  Hold on!  Hang on!
   Watch out!  Look out!  Keep it up!
   b) Lighten up!  Steady on!  Come off it!  Spit it out!  Sip on it!
   Come on!  Go on!  Hurry up!  Belt up!  Fire away!

Depending on the situation and your relationship with your boss or teacher you might feel
it is appropriate to use these expressions: Steady on! Hurry up! Go on! Come on!

41.2 1. Come on! Spit it out!  5. Mind out!
2. Come off it!  6. Steady on!
3. Hold on!  7. Keep it up!
4. Lighten up!

166 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
41.3 1 Fire away!  2 Step on it!  3 Spit it out!

41.4 Hang on! and Hold on! both mean wait a minute.
Possible situation: Someone is talking at great length and you want to interrupt to ask something.
Mind out! and Watch out! both mean be careful.
Possible situation: Someone is about to step in front of a car.
Hurry up! and Step on it! both mean go faster or do something faster.
Possible situation: Someone is in a taxi and wants to get to the station in time to catch a train.

Unit 42

42.1 Suggested answers:
1 She's rubbing out what was written on the blackboard.
2 He's crossing a word out.
3 She's giving/handling out some books to the class.
4 He's giving/handing in some homework.
5 She's working out the sum/answer.
6 not pleased
7 not pleased

42.2 1 not pleased   2 not pleased   3 pleased   4 pleased   5 not pleased
6 not pleased

42.3 1 fell behind   2 catch up   3 work out   4 missed out   5 messed up

42.4 1 Students often play up when they are bored in class.
2 The teacher rubbed out the new words from the board and then tested us. Or The teacher rubbed the new words out ...
3 We have to hand in our registration forms for the exam on Friday. Or We have to hand our registration forms in ...
4 I usually leave out my middle name when I am filling in forms. Or I usually leave my middle name out ...
5 Some people were handing out leaflets about a demonstration in the town centre.
Or Some people were handing out leaflets ...

42.5 Possible answers:
1 You are often asked to cross our rough work in an exam so that the examiner knows which work needs to be marked.
2 If a teacher gives out a sheet listing all the kings and queens of Britain it is a handout. It would only be a worksheet if it also included some exercises or activities relating to the information.
3 Most pupils carry an eraser in their pencil cases in order to rub out mistakes that they make.
4 It would be quite easy for me to work out how many euros are equal to 250 US dollars if I had a calculator.
5 I think some pupils may play up in class if they find the class too easy, too difficult or too dull for them.

Unit 43

43.1 Suggested answers:
1 I'm going to sign up for a course in statistics next year. (not I'm going to sign for a course-up ...)

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 167
2. Several students dropped out of the Moral Philosophy course.
3. We break up on 20 June. (not *We break on 20 June up.*)
4. He was thrown out of university after one term. He'd done no work at all.
5. I can't come out tonight. I have to write up my essay for tomorrow.
6. Or I can't come out tonight. I have to write my essay up for tomorrow.
7. I go back to college on 12 September. (not *I go on 12 September back to college.*)

43.2 Only breaking up would make most students happy. Scrapping through means only just passing an exam (but perhaps a student who had not worked hard would be happy!!). Being thrown out and dropping out show that you have not made a success of student life.

43.3 1 mug up or swot up
2 kept up
3 brush up on or mug up on or swot up on or polish up on
4 come up
5 scraped through
6 write up
7 break up
8 go back

43.4 Dick hardly swotted/mugged up at all for his exams. He brushed up on the history of the French Revolution, but no questions on the French Revolution came up in the exam. He was afraid that he would be thrown out of university for failing his exams. However, he did just manage to scrape through them and so he will be in college when we go back next term. He has promised to try to keep up with work next year as he is planning to sign up for a couple of quite difficult courses, including business studies. He'll have to polish up* his French because the business-studies course involves spending a term in France working in a business. He thinks he can just pick up** the language when he gets there, but I think he should study it before he goes because he only has school French.

* We can also say: He'll have to polish his French up ...
** We can also say: He thinks he can just pick the language up when he gets there ...

Follow up
Included in the Mini dictionary are:
break away break down break in(to) break off break out
While they each have different meanings, break seems to suggest a sudden, sometimes violent or negative, event which changes a situation, for example, a marriage breaks up, a disease/epidemic breaks out, a group of people break away from another group.

Unit 44

44.1 1 c, h, i 2 j 3 g 4 e, h, i 5 c, i 6 d 7 a 8 b 9 f 10 c

44.2 1 read out
2 dipped into
3 scribble down or jot down or note down
4 write it out
5 make out
6 fill in or fill out

English Phrasal Verbs in Use
7 nose down (or, if you are in a hurry, jot down or scribble down)  
8 read up on  
9 turn over  
10 jot down or note down or scribble down

44.3 1 cut it out  2 touch on/upon  3 tone down  4 cropped  5 sum up

**Unit 45**

45.1 a) stand down, step down, knock off, lay off  
b) fix up, pencil in

45.2 1 taking  6 pull  
2 on  7 ahead  
3 carry  8 stands or steps  
4 left  9 hand  
5 in

45.3 Possible answers:  
1 Yes, please fill me in. (not Yes, please fill in me.)  
2 Certainly, I'll follow them up later today. (not Certainly, I'll follow up them later today.)  
3 Yes, I'll fix something up for you for next week. Or Yes, I'll fix up something for next week.  
  Note that 'pencil in something' or 'pencil something in for next week' is also possible,  
  but means that the arrangement is not yet definite.  
4 Well, I've been doing it for years and I thought it was time to hand over to someone else. Or ... I thought it was time to step/stand down.  
5 Sure, why don't we pencil it in for next Tuesday afternoon. (not Sure, why don't we  
  pencil in it for next Tuesday afternoon.)

45.4 Author's answers:  
1 These are some of the tasks I have to carry out each day – reading and answering  
  e-mails, filing and making phone calls.  
2 I usually knock off at about 5 p.m.  
3 Yes, most of the teachers at the language school where I used to work were laid off a  
  few years ago.  
4 I think you have to be well organised and good at getting on with other people in order  
  to get ahead.  
5 I filled in an application form and then had an interview with my current boss.

**Unit 46**

46.1 1 pile up  2 be snowed under  3 be tied up  4 slave away

46.2 Suggested answers:  
1 I've been slaving away in a restaurant to pay for my studies.  
2 Sorry, I was tied up all last week, so I couldn't go to any of the meetings.  
3 Paperwork has just piled up recently. I don't know where to start.  
4 I'm sorry I can't do the report this week. I'm just snowed under.

46.3 1 on  2 out of  3 away  4 in  5 up with
I need to chase Gerald's report so that we can keep things moving along with the European sales campaign. I know he's been working on it and I know he's been working towards the same goals as all of us to branch out into new markets in Europe, but he's not good at sticking at things and you need to keep at it with campaigns like this one.

Unit 47

47.1 Suggested answers:
1. The suspected criminal took out all the money from his bank account and has not been seen since.
2. As his girlfriend is in Australia, he runs up a huge phone bill every month.
3. The bill for the books we ordered came to $40.85.
4. I lent him $100 a year ago and he still hasn't paid me back. (not ... paid-back me.)
5. Now that I've lost my job we're going to have to cut back (on) what we spend on our weekly trip to the supermarket.
6. If you pay the restaurant bill with your credit card, I'll settle up with you later.

47.2 1 up 2 off 3 back 4 side 5 down (Note that knockdown is written as one word.)

47.3 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 d

47.4 Author's answers:
1. I'm saving up for a new mountain bike.
2. I usually take $200 out.
3. I'd expect it to come to about £150.
4. My mortgage is my biggest debt and I won't pay that off for years.
5. I might pick up second-hand books and CDs.

Unit 48

48.1 1 beat 2 fork 3 skimp 4 picked or snapped 5 sell

48.2 Suggested answers:
1. I could stock up on important foods such as bread, milk, fruit, vegetables and meat.
2. I could splash out on some new furniture.
3. I could ask him/her to knock something off the price.
4. I should shop around to find the best price.
5. I could suggest that we club together to buy her some flowers.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use
48.3 1 She became an Internet addict and ran up a huge telephone bill.
2 We were ripped off in that restaurant. They charged us for four desserts when we only had two.
3 He sold off his share in the business and went travelling round the world.
4 When he offered me his tennis racket for only $10 I snapped it up because it was still in excellent condition.
5 We had to fork out for a new washing machine because our old one broke down.

48.4 1 rip off someone or rip someone off: a rip-off
2 These verbs have noun forms:
   pick up something/someone or pick something/someone up: a pick-up
   Examples: It's an 8.30 a.m. pick-up tomorrow, so we'll have to get up at seven.
               [a cart/taxi/bus will be coming to collect us]
   He drives an old pickup and wears a cowboy hat. [small truck with an open back]
   Economists are expecting a pick-up in house sales later this year. [an increase or
   improvement]
   I thought she was just being friendly, then I realised it was a pick-up. [informal: attempt
   to form a sexual relationship with me]
   sell off something or sell something off: a sell-off
   Example: The company sell-off raised millions of pounds. [a sale of all or part of a
   business]
   sell out something: a sell-out
   Examples: The concert was a sell-out. [all the tickets were sold]
   The workers were disappointed that the union had agreed to end the strike, and they
   called it a sell-out. [a betrayal of principles]

Unit 49

49.1 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 c

49.2 Suggested answers:
1 Henry: Yes, they've been pouring money into farming.
2 Jan: Yes, you're right. He started up around ten years ago. Or He set up his
   business about ten years ago.
3 Jamie: Yes, I'd put it at five million (euros). Or Yes, I'd say it runs to five...
   Or Yes, I'd say their losses run into five...
4 Lianne: Yes, they're setting up a branch there. Or Yes, they're starting up a branch
   there. (Note that set up sounds better than start up.)
5 Fiona: Yes, the upkeep is very expensive.

49.3 1 take over 2 hire out 3 turnover 4 outlet 5 set-up 6 run to

Unit 50

50.1 1 Hotel operator: If you want to dial out, you have to dial 9 first.
2 It's difficult to get through to the customer helpline in the mornings.
3 I'm sorry, he's out right now. Can you ring back (or phone/call back) at about 8
   o'clock?
4 Carole rang in to say she's not feeling well.
5 Uncle: Hi! Fine thanks. Just a minute, I'll put you on to your aunt so you can tell her
   all the news. (or I'll put your aunt on so you ...) I'll get back to you in a few days.
50.3 speak up = speak more loudly
hold on = wait a moment
break up = If someone who is talking on a mobile phone is breaking up, their voice cannot fully be heard.
switch off = turn an electrical device off
charge up = put electricity into a device

50.4 Suggested answers:
1 Sorry, my mobile phone was switched off. Or Sorry, I'd switched off my mobile phone.
2 Sorry, the signal's breaking up and I can't hear what you're saying. Or Sorry, you're breaking up and I can't hear what you're saying.
3 Sorry, could you speak up? There's a lot of background noise.
4 Have you charged up your mobile phone?
5 Sorry, can you hold on just a minute?

Unit 51

51.1 Positive feelings – George, Mike and Anna
Negative feelings – Jill, Sue, Henry, Mary and Ken

51.2 1 The news that I didn't have to do the exam after all cheered me up.
2 Look, Joe. Calm/cool down! Getting angry won't solve the problem.
3 When she heard of her friend's death she broke down and wept.
4 She's (so) hung up about silly little problems at work.
5 I wish you'd brighten up! You're making me feel depressed! (You can also say: I wish you'd cheer up! using cheer up without an object.)

51.3 1 Yes, I'm beginning to warm to it too.
2 Sure, I'd jump at the chance.
3 I know – I do feel for them both.
4 Yes, I hope he pulls himself together before his next attempt.
5 Don't get carried away!
6 What more can we do to cheer her up?

172 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
Unit 52

52.1  1 broken    2 fear    3 pull    4 up    5 to
      6 felt    7 down    8 hung    9 cheer

52.2  1 fallen    2 falling-out    3 chat    4 hit it or pair    5 chatting    6 for
      7 on    8 fallen    9 fit    10 ask    11 hit it off or get along

52.3  My friend and I fell out last week because she thinks I'm in love with her boyfriend.
The new student was finding it difficult to fit in, as he was older than the other students.
When George met his new colleague he really fell for her and now he talks about her all
the time.
Barry and David hit it off immediately when they were introduced.
That horrible man over there was trying to chat me up. Ugh!

Unit 53

53.1  1 c    2 f    3 e    4 a    5 b    6 d

53.2  My sister and her husband split up last year.
Milly was very upset when her boyfriend finished with her. Or Milly was very upset
when her boyfriend broke up with her.
We had been growing apart for a long time, so it was better to separate properly.

53.3  1 make up    5 live, down
      2 ran off with    6 miss out
      3 settle down    7 settle for
      4 let, down    8 break off
Unit 54

54.1 1 Dermot  2 Gina  3 George  4 Michael  5 Yvette  6 Yolanda

54.2 1 keeping, let  2 shut, keep  3 pin  4 talks  5 poured, opened, outpouring

54.3 1 let on  2 gone back  3 keeping  4 owned up  5 have it out with

Unit 55

55.1 1 carry on  2 takes after  3 drop out  4 handed down  5 live up to  6 become of  7 bringing up  8 pass for

55.2 Author’s answers:

1 I was named after a character in a book.
2 I think I take after my mother in appearance.
3 I probably take after my father in character.
4 I think that girls usually grow up much faster than boys.
5 Someone might drop out of university because of ill health or because they were not enjoying their studies.
6 Someone might turn to crime if they need money to pay debts or buy drugs.
7 A girl I know is only fifteen but she could easily pass for twenty in both appearance and behaviour.
8 I have a tea service that has been handed down from my great-grandparents.
9 I think that mothers and fathers have equally important but different roles to play in bringing up their children.
10 I would like to carry on working for as long as possible as I enjoy working.

55.3 1 named  2 take  3 brought  4 live  5 dropping  6 become  7 turn  8 ended or wound  9 ended or wound  10 carried

Unit 56

56.1 1 down  2 off  3 up  4 up  5 up  6 off

56.2 1 I’ve had a sore throat for a week now – I just can’t shake it off.
2 Meg hadn’t eaten anything for 48 hours and so it wasn’t surprising that she passed out in the middle of her gym lesson.
3 The doctors were afraid that the old man wouldn’t survive the attack of pneumonia, but amazingly he pulled through and was soon on his feet again.
4 I think I’m coming down with a cold – I feel a bit shivery.
5 My thumb swelled up after I accidentally hit it with a hammer.
6 The sea was so rough that many people were throwing up over the side of the ship.
7 People usually write letters of condolence to the relatives of someone who has passed away/on.
8 The old lady is in great pain because she has put her hip out.
9 After the operation, her sister cared for her until she was completely recovered.
10 How do you think you came down with (or went down with) chicken pox?

56.3
1 Jim's uncle passed away last year.
2 Sonya is fighting off a bout of flu.
3 Rita is kept very busy caring for her elderly mother.
4 Mary's ankles swelled up during the long flight.
5 Most people usually slow down a bit as they get older.
6 I think Joe is going down with flu.

56.4 Possible answers:
1 When her great-aunt passed away Mary felt very sad.
2 Jack broke down when he failed his final exams.
3 The last time I threw up was after a party where I'd eaten too much.
4 You can get a blocked-up nose if you have a cold or an allergy.
5 Kate’s finger swelled up after it was hit by a hockey ball.
6 The best way to fight off a cold is to stay in bed and drink a lot.

Unit 57
57.1
1 join in = participate
2 give in = surrender
3 go for = attempt to achieve
4 pull ahead = overtake
5 knock out = defeat

57.2
1 warm-up
2 knockout
3 burn off (Work off would also be possible in this context.)
4 work off
5 warm up
6 cool down

57.3 Author's answers:
1 I work out about four times a month. Usually I go to an aerobics class.
2 I might warm up by doing some gentle stretches and by running on the spot.
3 I'd be pleased because if I pulled ahead of the other runners it means that I am winning.
4 Tennis is better than table tennis at burning off calories because it is more energetic than table tennis.
5 I'd prefer to join in a snooker game as I'm not very good at football.
6 A top athlete would go for the gold medal.

57.4 Suggested answers:
1 The player or the team is kicking off. Or It is the kick-off.
2 The woman is burning off calories. Or The woman is working out on an exercise bike.
3 The athlete is warming up or is doing a warm-up. Or (if he has just done some sport) The athlete is cooling down.
57.5 1 told to leave 2 was defeated by 3 progressed

Unit 58

58.1 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 f

58.2 1 up 5 sleeping or lying
2 stay 6 in
3 lie 7 over
4 up, up 8 oversleep

58.3 1 waiting up or staying up
2 put her up or let her sleep over
3 oversleeping or sleeping in
4 move out
5 turn in
6 moved in together

Unit 59

59.1 1 He said I could bring Jane along if I liked.
2 He asked us over/round after the film. Or He invited us around/round/over after the film.
3 He said he would pop in/into the shop for some biscuits on the way home.
4 He said he loved having people around/round/over.
5 He said I could borrow the CD if his friend brought it round before my party.

59.2 1 My parents are always asking after you so I’ll tell them your news next time I see them.
2 Do drop in/round some time when you’re passing our house and have a cup of tea.
3 My uncle has invited me and a friend out to a smart restaurant to celebrate my birthday.
4 Of course you can bring your brother along when you come to our place tomorrow.
5 I often call round and see my grandmother on my way home from work.
6 I hope I’m not in trouble. The boss has just asked me to pop in to his office (or pop into his office).

59.3 1 a) The speaker has to go upstairs to Bill’s office.
b) The speaker has to go downstairs to Bill’s office.
2 a) The speaker plans to invite Andy and Becky to a meal at his or her home.
b) The speaker plans to take Andy and Becky for a meal in a restaurant.
3 a) This visit sounds a little more formal than the visit in (b) and the visitors may ríg Peggy first to check that the time is convenient.
b) This visit sounds more informal than the one suggested in (a) and Peggy is unlikely to know about it in advance.
4 a) The speaker is going to bring their niece to visit someone and may not stay during the visit.
b) The speaker’s niece is going to accompany the speaker on a visit.

59.4 Possible answers:
Do call round and see me any time you are in the area.
Pop in and have some supper with me one evening.
Please come over and have dinner with me next weekend.
Do come round this weekend. It’d be great to see you.
59.5 stand someone up = fail to meet someone on purpose, especially someone with whom you were starting to have a romantic relationship
tag along = go somewhere with a person, especially when they have not asked you to go with them
run across someone = meet someone you know when you are not expecting to meet them

Unit 60

60.1 1 top 2 heat 3 thaw 4 pour 5 hand

60.2 Suggested answers:
1 Philip: Yes, I think it's gone off.
2 Harry: Yes, we need something that will go (nicely) with it.
3 Jane: OK, I'll put them on.
4 Rickie: Yes, we'll have to make sure it doesn't boil over.
5 Dave: Good idea. It's ages since we last ate out.

60.3 1 be left over; noun: leftovers (Note that this noun is always plural.)
take away; noun: takeaway
top up; noun: top-up
2 hand round
3 live on or live off

60.4 1 leftovers 2 live on or live off 3 hand round or pass round 4 top-up
5 take it away 6 takeaway 7 was left over

60.5 You can separate the verb and particle in the following sentences:
1 Would you hand the peanuts round, please?
3 Don't forget to thaw the gâteau out.

Unit 61

61.1 1 to cloud over 4 warmed up
2 cool down 5 clears up
3 has picked up or is picking up 6 brightens up or clears up

61.2 1 We were snowed in. We couldn't even open the front door
2 We were flooded out. All our carpets were ruined.
3 The rain didn't let up. We ate our picnic in the car.
4 It cleared up later on. We went for a walk in the evening.
5 A strong wind picked up. Some trees got blown down.
6 The match was rained off. The teams were very disappointed.

61.3 1 downpour 5 were rained off
2 let up or clear up or brighten up 6 brightens up or clears up
3 flooded out 7 cool down
4 had blown over 8 warn up

61.4 1 more cheerful
2 angry
3 finish
4 better
5 more enjoyable
6 worried
Unit 62

62.1 1 Jack set off last Sunday. Or Jack set out last Sunday.
2 Jill got on the plane in Dubai.
3 My journey started off in a very exciting way.

62.2 1 start or set 6 gets
2 standby 7 check
3 takes 8 stop
4 get 9 stop
5 touch 10 get

62.3 phrasal verb noun/adjective form example
touch down touchdown The plane burst into flames on touchdown.
check in check-in There was a long queue at the check-in.
get away getaway Police are trying to trace the getaway car.
take off take-off Please fasten your seatbelts for take-off.
stop over stopover We had a stopover in New York.

62.4 I set off for Waterloo Station at 11 a.m. and there I got on the midday Eurostar train to Paris. It pulled out exactly on time and soon we were in the Channel Tunnel. After a couple of hours we pulled in at Paris Gare du Nord station. Next day I checked out of my hotel and flew back. We touched down at Heathrow Airport at 11 a.m.

Unit 63

63.1 1 pull up or pull over 6 drew up or pulled up or pulled in
2 pick you up, drop you off 7 pulled up or drew up

63.2 words relating to moving and stopping the car
draw up
pull up
pull over
pull in
pull into
pull out

words relating to accidents and traffic problems
knock down
run over
pile-up
railback

drop off
pick up

J78 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
63.3 1 up 2 back 3 in 4 over 5 out 6 off
63.4 1 e 2 d 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 c

Unit 64
64.1 1 turn or switch 2 plug 3 turn or switch 4 charge 5 Turn

64.2 Suggested answers:
1. I'll load up the dishwasher for you. Or I'll load the dishwasher up for you.
2. Play back that tape you recorded at the concert. Or Play that tape you recorded at the concert back.
3. The mechanic pumped up the tyres while he was servicing the car. Or The mechanic pumped the tyres up while he was servicing the car.
4. The security alarm went off when we opened the door to the office.
5. I was driving up a steep hill when the engine cut out.
6. Could you run off thirty copies of this report for the meeting, please? Or Could you run thirty copies of this report off for the meeting, please?
7. We've just bought a breadmaking machine. All you do is measure out all the ingredients, put them in the machine and switch it on. Or All you do is measure all the ingredients out, put them in the machine and switch it on.
8. Don't switch on the vacuum cleaner until it is plugged in.

64.3 1 I couldn't hear what they were saying on the radio so I turned it up.
2. What must we do when the alarm bell goes off?
3. My mobile is low. Can I charge it up here?
4. Could you help me, please, by loading up the washing machine?
5. It's very dark in here – do switch on the light.
   Note that you would switch off the light if the room was very light rather than very dark.
6. Mel asked him to measure out 250 grams of butter.

Unit 65
65.1 Suggested answers:
log on
key in your report
back up your work (Note that some people may choose to print out their work before they back it up.)
print out your work
log off
65.2 1 zoom in, zoom out 4 logged in/on
2 picking up 5 back-up
3 scroll down 6 printout
65.3 1 c 2 c 3 d 4 a 5 b 6 d
65.4 You'd click on these icons when you want to:
1 zoom in or zoom out of a document
2 scroll across/up/down a document
3 print out a document
4 pick up e-mails
46.1  
1 False. Although to flare up can be used of fires or violence, here the context clearly means it is violence which has suddenly occurred.  
2 True  
3 True  
4 False. It has not been published, but people have discovered what the report contains because someone has unofficially or illegally released the information.  
5 False. They have withdrawn from the trade agreement.  
6 True  

66.2  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>noun form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crack down</td>
<td>crackdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out (from prison)</td>
<td>breakout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out (war, disease, etc.)</td>
<td>outbreak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break through</td>
<td>breakthrough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide away</td>
<td>hideaway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flare up</td>
<td>flare-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look out for</td>
<td>lookout*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A lookout can be either a person or a place.
There is also a noun outlook, which means prospect or view, but it comes from a different sense of the phrasal verb look out, namely have a view over, e.g.
Our hotel room looked out over a park.
The outlook for the economy is very bad.

66.3  
1 Hey did you read that? A bomb went off in the capital last night, injuring six people.
2 Did you read that? Riots have broken out between the Northern tribes and the Southern League.
3 Did you see that? The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to step up their attacks on military bases.
   Or The Phrasalian rebels are beginning to step up their attacks on military bases up.
   (Note that this sounds more awkward than the first version.)
4 Have you heard? The teachers' union has broken off talks with local government officials.
   Or The teachers' union has broken talks off with local government officials.
   (Note that this sounds more awkward than the first version.)
5 The police are advising villagers to look out for anything suspicious.
6 Wow! There's been a breakout at (or from) Gilson High Security Prison.

Unit 67  
67.1  
1 An old man was beaten up in his own home yesterday.
2 The thieves walked off with some priceless antique silver.
3 The burglars broke into the house by a side window.
4 The prisoner managed to break out in broad daylight.
5 The thieves held up a local bank yesterday.
67.2 1. The man is holding up a bank or shop.  
2. The judge is letting off a criminal. Or The judge is letting off a criminal.  
3. He’s tipping off the police. Or He’s tipping the police off.  
4. She’s leaning on someone. Or She’s putting someone up to something.

57.3 1. mixed up  
2. putting him up  
3. leaning on or being leaned on  
4. taken in or led on  
5. let him off

67.4 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a

Unit 68

68.1 1. stood, clamp  
2. broke, entered  
3. carried, bring  
4. standing, sticking

68.2 1. Politician: No, we are determined to go ahead with our proposals.  
2. Politician: We intend to do away with out-of-date committees and to modernise the whole committee structure to make it more efficient.  
3. Politician: No, I do not. I and many supporters are determined to stick by her in the face of these appalling and unfair attacks from the press.  
4. Politician: Yes, the party fully backs Mr Carson up.

68.3 1. The People’s Purple Party believes that the monarchy should be done away with.  
2. The PPP aims to bring legislation banning fox hunting.  
3. Or The PPP aims to bring legislation in banning fox hunting.  
4. The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party carrying out its aims.  
5. Or The leader of the PPP says nothing will stop the Party carrying its aims out.  
6. He swears he will do all he can to stand up for the principles the PPP supports.  
7. The PPP has got the go-ahead to hold a demonstration next week.

Unit 69

69.1 1. Would you like to wash up? Sure. Where’s the bedroom?  
2. What’s wrong with the TV? Dunno. I can’t figure out why it’s not working.  
3. Why is she so upset? Her parents have just bawled her out.  
4. Where will you buy your new TV? Dunno. I’ll call around a few places.  
5. Where’s Jo gone? To visit with some friends.  
6. Why d’you think you failed the test? Because I goofed off so much.

69.2 1. shot through 2. got into 3. belt into 4. barracks for

69.3 1. I expect your grandmother will want to wash up when she arrives.  
2. The teacher got into me for doing such a bad essay.  
3. I will lose his job for goofing off to go to a concert.  
4. Suzie belted into the spring cleaning and the house was soon transformed.  
5. Could you call around to find the cheapest place to rent a car?  
6. I can’t figure out why he’s behaving so oddly.  
7. He shot through last month and the police have been looking for him ever since.
8 I'll be ready soon. Wait up!
9 I'm visiting with my aunt at the weekend. Would you like to come too?

**Unit 70**

### 70.1
1 bliss 5 bigged
2 out 6 cashback
3 sexing 7 out
4 buy 8 burnout

### 70.2 Suggested answers:
1 The e-mail will probably bounce back (to you).
2 veg out
3 chill out
4 You might feel stressed-out and you might suffer from burnout.
5 cashback
6 big
7 bliss out
8 a dress-down day
9 You could text them back.
10 veg out, chill out, bliss out
11 bounce back, text back, cashback
12 stressed-out, burnout

### 70.3 Suggested answers:
1 Yes, it'll be great to just veg out! Or Yes, it'll be great to just chill out.
2 Sure, I'll text you back.
3 I don't buy into it at all. Or It might help us to chill out more.
4 No, I'm (all) partyed out.
5 I did but it bounced back to me.
6 I know! She should learn to chill out. Or Yes, she's far too stressed-out.
7 It's a dress-down day!
8 Oh, they really bigged it up.
Mini dictionary

The numbers in the Mini dictionary are Unit numbers not page numbers.

allow for sth to consider or include something when you are making plans or judging a situation 37
answer (sb) back if someone, especially a child, answers back, or answers someone back, they reply rudely to someone they should be polite to 20
ask after sb/sth to ask for information about someone, especially about their health 59
ask sb out to invite someone to come with you to a place such as the cinema or a restaurant, especially as a way of starting a romantic relationship 1, 52
ask sb over/round to invite someone to come to your house 1, 59
back down to admit that you are wrong or that you have been defeated, often because you are forced to 38
back off to stop being involved in a situation, especially in order to allow other people to deal with it themselves 34
back onto sth if a building backs onto something, its back faces that thing 24
back out to decide not to do something that you were going to do or that you had agreed to do 38
back up (sth) or back (sth) up to make a copy of computer information so that you do not lose it 63
back up sb or back sb up to say that someone is telling the truth 38
back up sb or back sb up to support or help someone 68
background an extra copy of computer information 63
bang into sth to knock against something, usually by accident 21
bask on sth to depend on something happening 34
beg/ask for sth to expect something to happen and be prepared for it 37
barrack for sb informal, American & Australian to shout encouragement to the players in a football team 69
bash sb/sth about to treat someone or something in a rough way 38
bawl out sb or bawl sb out informal, American & Australian to tell someone angrily that something they have done is wrong 69
be booked if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for you 34
be caught up in sth to be involved in a situation, often when you do not want to be 34
be cut off to be a long way from other places and people 24
be dying for sth informal to want something very much, especially food or drink 19
be getting at sth informal if you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because you have expressed something indirectly 7
be hung up informal to be very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it 51
be left over if an amount of money or food is left over, it remains when the rest has been used or eaten 60
be left over to exist from an earlier time 23
be littered with sth if something is littered with a particular type of thing, it has a lot of that thing 32
be mixed up in sth informal to be involved in an illegal or unpleasant activity 67
be parted out informal to have had enough of parties because you have been to so many 70
be playing at sth if you ask what someone is playing at, you ask what they are doing, in a way which shows that you are surprised and angry 40
be pressed for sth to have very little or not enough of something, especially time or money 22
be put out to be annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you 11
be ruined off if a sport or other outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining 61
be set against sth/ding sth to be opposed to doing or having something 37
be snowed in if a person or place is snowed in, there is so much snow that it is impossible to travel anywhere or leave that place 61
be snowed under informal to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it 46
be spread out if people or things are spread out, they are in different parts of a large area and are not close together 24
be taken up with sth to be very busy doing something 12
be thrown together if people are thrown together in a situation, that situation causes them to meet each other and to get to know each other 34
be tied up informal to be busy so that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere 46
be tucked away to be in a quiet or hidden place which not many people see or go to 24
beat down sb/sth down to force someone to reduce the price of something 48
beaut up sb or beat sb up: to hurt someone badly by hitting or kicking them again and again.
become of sb/sth: if you ask what became of someone or something, you want to know where they are and what happened to them.
belch into sth: Australian to begin to do something quickly and with a lot of effort.
belt up: informal, British or Australian something that you say angrily to someone in order to tell them to be quiet.
bend over backwards to do sth: to try extremely hard to do something to help or please someone.
big up sb/sth: informal to talk a lot about how excellent someone or something is, sometimes praising them more than is deserved.
bite back: to do something bad to someone because they have done something bad to you.
bite back sth or back sth back to stop yourself from saying something that shows your real feelings or thoughts.
blend in or blend into sth: if something or someone blends in, they look or seem the same as the things or people around them and so you do not notice them.
bliss (ch) out: informal to become or make someone become totally happy and relaxed.
blocked-up: adj filled with something so that nothing can pass through.[used of a narrow space]. 4, 56
blow down (sth) or blow (sth) down: if something blows down, or if the wind blows something down, that thing falls to the ground because the wind blows it.
blow over: if a storm blows over, it becomes less strong and then ends.
blow over: if an unpleasant situation e.g. argument) blows over, it gradually becomes less important and is then forgotten. 26
blow up (sth/sb) or blow (sth/sb) up: to destroy something or kill someone with a bomb, or to be destroyed or killed with a bomb.
blow up sth or blow sth up: to fill something e.g. balloon, tyre with air.
blow up: informal to suddenly become very angry.
boil over: if a liquid that is being heated boils over, it flows over the side of the pan.
booked up: if an event, person, or place is booked up, they have no space or time available for someone.
bottle out: informal, British to suddenly decide not to do something because you are afraid.
bottle up sth or bottle sth up: informal to not allow yourself to talk about your feelings, especially feelings of anger and sadness.
bounce back: if an e-mail bounces back, it comes back to you because the address is wrong or there is a computer problem.
branch out: to start to do something different from what you usually do, especially in your job.
break away: to stop being part of a group because you disagree with them or because you do not want to be controlled by them.
break down: if a machine or vehicle breaks down, it stops working.
break down: to be unable to control your feelings and to start to cry.
break down: to become mentally or physically ill because of an unpleasant experience.
break in: to get into a building or car by using force, usually in order to steal something.
break into sth: to get into a building or car by using force, usually in order to steal something.
breaks-in: when someone forces their way into a building or car, usually to steal something.
break off (sth) or break (sth) off: to stop doing something.
break off (sth) or break (sth) off: if discussions between two groups of people break off, or if someone breaks them off, they end suddenly, before they have been completed.
break off to suddenly stop speaking.
break off sth or break sth off: to end a relationship.
break off with sb: to end a romantic relationship with someone.
break out: if something dangerous and unpleasant e.g. war, disease, fire breaks out, it suddenly starts. 66
breakout: if something unpleasant or difficult to control starts, such as war or disease.
break up: to escape to escape from prison.
breakout: if an escape.
break through sth to succeed in dealing with a problem or difficult situation.
breakthrough: an important discovery or success that helps you achieve or deal with something.
break up: if a marriage breaks up, or if two people who have a romantic relationship break up, their marriage or relationship ends.
break-up: the act or event of breaking up.
break up: if schools or universities, or the people who study or work in them break up, classes end and the holidays start.
break up: if someone who is talking on a mobile phone is breaking up, their voice cannot be heard.
brighten up: if the weather brightens up, the sky becomes lighter and the sun starts to shine.
break up: to suddenly look or feel happier.
brighten up sth or brighten sth up to make something more attractive, often by adding colours 24
bring about sth or bring sth about to make something happen 23
bring along sth or bring sth along to bring something to someone or somewhere 59
bring around (round) sth or bring sth around (round) to bring someone or something somewhere, especially to someone’s house 59
bring about (around) to persuade someone to agree with you or to do what you want them to do 39
bring back sth or bring sth back to make someone remember or think about something from the past 1, 25
bring down sb or bring sb down to cause people in positions of power (e.g. government, president) to lose their position 56
bring forward sth or bring sth forward to change the date in time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned 22
bring in sth or bring sth in if a government or organisation brings in something new (e.g. law, rule), they make it exist for the first time 68
bring off sth or bring sth off to succeed in doing something difficult 27
bring round (around) sth or bring sth round (around) to bring someone or something round (around) to bring something up to look after a child and educate them until they are old enough to look after themselves 55
bring up sth or bring sth up to start to talk about a particular subject 1, 33
brush aside or brush sth aside to refuse to listen to what someone says, or to refuse to think about something seriously 2, 39
brush up (on) sth to practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something that you learned in the past but have partly forgotten 43
bubble over to be very excited and enthusiastic 33
build an sth to use a success or achievement as a basis from which to achieve more success 27
burn off sth or burn sth off to use or get rid of energy or something which provides energy (e.g. calories, fat), by doing a lot of physical exercise 8
humorous = illness or extremely tired because you have been working too hard 70
burst into sth to suddenly start to make a noise, especially to start crying, laughing or singing 23
burst into tears to interrupt a conversation or discussion of someone who is talking 31
buy into sth informal to completely believe in a set of ideas 70
byeone adv from the past 23
bystander n a person who sees something happening but who is not involved 4
call around American to telephone several people, often in order to find out information 59
call back to go back to a place in order to visit someone or collect something that you were unable to visit or collect earlier 24
call back (sb) or call (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 25, 50
(call for sth to need or desire a particular action or quality 16
call for sth to say that you think a particular thing should be done, usually in order to change or improve a situation 39
call for stb to visit a place in order to collect someone 19
call in British & American to visit a place or person for a short time, usually while you are going somewhere else 16
call off sth or call sth off to decide that a planned event or activity will not happen, especially because it is no longer possible or useful 1, 2, 33
call off sth or call sth off to decide to stop an activity that has already started 5, 28
call round British & American to visit someone who lives near to you for a short time 59
calm down (stb) or calm (sb) down to stop feeling upset, angry, or excited, or to make someone stop feeling this way 37
calm down (stb) or calm (sb) down if a situation calms down, or if you calm it down, it becomes more peaceful 34
can’t do / can’t get over sth if someone can’t get over something, they are very surprised or shocked that something has happened or that something is true 7
care for sb to look after someone who is too young, too old, or too ill to look after themselves 56
carry away to become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else 31
carry on to continue doing something 55
carry out sth or carry sth out to do or complete something, especially something important 45
carry out sth or carry sth out if you carry out something that you said you would do, or that you have been told to do (e.g. instructions, order, threat), you do it 68
cashback n money from your bank account that you can get from a shop when you buy goods with a debit card 70
catch on to become popular 27

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 185
catch up to reach someone in front of you by going faster than them 27
catch up to reach the same quality or standard as someone or something else 42
catch up on/watch sth to do something you did not have time to do earlier 46
catch up with sb to meet someone you know, after not seeing them for a period of time 19
gained up in sth to be involved in a situation, often when you do not want to be 34
debug to debug a program or system to another 4, 26
debug sth or debug sth up if you charge up a piece of electrical equipment, you put electricity into it 50, 64
debug sb to ask someone to do something that they said they would do but that they have not done yet 46
debug sth or debug sth up to try to get something that belongs to you or that you need, or to try to discover more information about something 2
debug up sb or chat sb up informal to talk to someone in a way that shows them that you are sexually attracted to them and to try to make them attracted to you 52
debug informal a way of talking which suggests you are sexually attracted to someone and want them to be attracted to you 52
check in to show your ticket at an airport so that you can be told where you are sitting and so that your bags can be put on the aircraft 62
check-in n the place at an airport where you go to say that you have arrived for your flight 4, 62
check-in or check into sth to arrive at a hotel and say who you are so that you can be given a key for your room 62
check-out to leave a hotel after paying and giving back the key of your room 62
check-out n the place where you pay for things in a big shop 4
check out sth or check sth out to examine something or someone to make sure that they are correct, healthy or working properly 17
check up on sb to discover what someone is doing in order to be certain that they are doing what they should be doing or what they said they would do 15
check up (sh) or check (sh) up if someone cheers up, and if someone or something cheers them up, they start to feel happier 11
check in informal to decide not to do something you had planned to do because you are not feeling well 17
chill out informal to relax completely, or not allow things to upset you 70
chop down sth or chop sth down to cut through a tree or a group of trees so that they fall to the ground 73
chop up sth or chop sth up to cut something, especially food, into small pieces 13
clamp down if someone in authority clamps down, they do something in order to stop or limit a particular activity 68
clamping down a sudden action taken by a government or people in authority to stop or limit a particular activity 68
clear off informal to leave a place quickly 15
clear out sth or clear sth out to make a place tidy by removing things that are unwanted 14
clear up (sth) or clear (sth) up to make a place tidy and clean, especially by putting things where they usually belong 5, 11
clear up if the weather clears up, it improves 61
climb in to record the time you arrive at work, usually on a machine with a clock 22
clock in/out to record the time you leave work, usually on a machine with a clock 22
clog up (sth) or clog (sth) up if something [e.g. road, pipe] clogs up, or if something clogs it up, it becomes blocked and nothing in it is able to move 13
close down (sth) or close (sth) down if a business or organisation closes down, or if someone or something closes it down, it stops doing business 17
close-up n if the sky is cloudy, it becomes covered with clouds 61
close-up informal a group of people club together, they share the cost of something between them 48
come about when you say how or why something comes about, especially something that is not planned, you explain how or why it happens 6
come across sth to discover something by chance, or to meet someone by chance 1, 6
come along to arrive at a place 6
come apart if something comes apart, it separates into pieces 6
come around to visit someone at their home 2, 59
come around to become conscious again 2, 6
come back to sth to start talking about a particular subject again 31
come down to sth if a situation or decision comes down to something, that is the thing that will influence it most 6
come down with sth to become ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious 17

come off to happen successfully or as planned 6, 27
Come off is: informal something that you say in order to tell someone that you do not believe them or that you disagree with them. 43
Come out: something or someone that you say to someone in order to encourage them to do something you want them to do, especially to hurry up, to try harder, or to tell you something. 44
Come out if dirt or colour comes out of something, especially clothing or cloth, it disappears or becomes less strong after being in water. 6
Come out if someone who has been in prison or hospital comes out, they leave. 6
Come out if something that is published [e.g. book, newspaper], a musical recording [e.g. single, album], or a film comes out, it becomes available for people to buy or see it. 14
Come out if the truth about something comes out, it becomes known publicly after it has been kept secret. 6
Come out if results or information come out, they are given to people. 6
Come over to visit someone at their house. 59
Come round/lend me come around/is to be a particular total when amounts or numbers are added together. 47
Come to if you come to a division or a conclusion, you make a decision about something, or you decide what you think about something. 6
Come under sth if a piece of information comes under a particular part of a list, book, or collection of things, you can find it in that part. 35
Come up if a subject [e.g. issue, matter] comes up in a conversation, it is discussed or mentioned. 6
Come up if a job or opportunity comes up, it becomes available. 6
Come up if a problem or difficult situation comes up, it happens when you do not expect it. 6
Come up if a question or a subject comes up in an exam, that question is asked or questions about that subject are asked in the exam. 43
Come up against sth/against sb to have to deal with a difficult situation or someone who disagrees with you or tries to stop you doing what you want to do. 1, 6
Come up with sth to think of or to suggest a plan or idea, a solution to a problem, or an answer to a question. 36
Cool down (plash) or cool (shush) down to become cooler, or to make someone or something become cooler. 37, 61
Cool down/off (plash) or cool (shush) down/off to become calmer, or to make someone or something become calmer. 51, 61
Could do with sth/is to need or want something or someone. 19

I could do without sth informal something you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it. 37
I couldn’t ask for sth/more if you say that you couldn’t ask for someone or something better, you mean that that person or thing is the best of their kind. 19
Come out/sth to have confidence in someone because you know that they will do what you want. 16
Come up an attempt to stop people discovering the truth about something bad. 4
Crack down if someone in authority [e.g. police, government] cracks down, they start treating people much more strictly in order to try to stop them from doing things they should not do. 17, 66
Crack down if something bad or illegal behaviour is dealt with in a very severe way, in order to stop it happening. 66
Cram into if a lot of people or animals cram in or cram into a place, they all go into it even though it is too small for all of them and becomes very full. 33
Crop up if a problem crops up, it suddenly happens, often when it is not expected. 34
Crop up if something, especially a word, crops up, it appears, often in something that you read, hear, or see. 44
Cross sth or cross sth out to draw a line through something that you have written, usually because it is wrong. 42
Cut back (stb) or cut (stb) back to reduce the amount of money that is being spent on something. 47
Cut down sth or cut sth down if you cut down a tree or a bush, you make it fall to the ground by cutting it near the bottoms. 17
Cut down sth to eat or drink less of a particular thing, usually in order to improve your health. 17
Cut down sth or cut sth down to reduce the amount or number of something. 28
Cut off sth or cut off to stop people from continuing a telephone conversation by breaking the telephone connection. 60
Cut off sth by cut sth off (shush) to prevent people from reaching a place or leaving a place. 2
Cut off to be a long way from other places and people. 24
Cut out sth or cut sth out to remove something by cutting, especially something made of paper or cloth. 2, 14
Cut out sth or cut sth out to remove a part of a piece of writing. 44

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 187
cut out if an engine, machine, or piece of equipment cuts out, it suddenly stops working 2, 64
date back to have existed since a particular time 23
down on one's luck if a fact depends on you, you realize or understand something after a period of time when you did not realize or understand it 36
deal with sth to take action in order to achieve something, or in order to solve a problem 31, 36
deal with sth if something [e.g. book, film, article] deals with a particular subject or idea, it is about that subject or idea 19
depend on/upon sth to trust someone or something and know that they will help you or do what you expect them to do 16
dial out to use a telephone in order to call someone in another building 50
die for sth informal see be dying for sth 19
dip into sth to read small parts of a book or magazine 44
divide up (sth) or divide (sth) up to separate something into smaller parts or groups, or to form smaller parts or groups 13
do away with sth to get rid of something, or to stop using something 1, 68
do up sth or do sth up to fasten something 32
do with — could do with sth to need or want something or someone 19
do without (sth) to manage without something or someone 37 see I can't do without sth
do without sth to use information or your knowledge or experience of something to help you do something 35
draw up if a vehicle, or someone in a vehicle, draws up, it arrives somewhere and stops 63
dress up (to do) or dress (to do) up to put on formal or special clothes for a special occasion, or to put them on someone else 2, 32
dress-down adj used about an occasion when you wear less formal clothes than normal 70
fall apart if two friends drift apart, they gradually become less friendly and their friendship ends 53
drink up (sth) or drink (sth) up to completely finish sth 20
drop around round informal to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before 59
drop around or drop around sth or drop sth round informal to deliver something, usually something small 59
drop in to make a short visit to someone in their home, usually without arranging it before 59
drop off sth or drop off sth to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, when you are going somewhere else 63
drop off sth or drop sth off to take someone to a place that they want to go to, or to deliver something to a place, usually in a car, often when you are going somewhere else 1
drop out if a student drops out, they stop going to classes before they have finished their course 4, 43, 55
dropout a person who leaves school or college before finishing a course 4
drop round/around see drop around round
dry up if a supply of something dries up, it ends 28
dry up to stop speaking, when you are acting or making a speech, especially because you suddenly forget what to say next 31
dying for sth informal to want something very much, especially food or drink 19
eat out to eat a meal in a restaurant, not at home 1, 60
eat up sth or eat sth up to eat all the food you have been given 13
e-mail back (sb) or e-mail (sb) back to send a reply to someone by e-mail, usually a reply to an e-mail someone has sent you 20
end up to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it 55
end up doing sth to finally do something, especially without having planned to 55
enter into sth to start to become involved in something, especially a discussion 21
enter into sth if you enter into an agreement, you officially agree to something 68
face up to sth to accept that a difficult or unpleasant situation exists 36
fall apart if something falls apart, it breaks or breaks into pieces, because it is old or weak 30
fall behind (sb/sth) to fail to develop at the same rate as something else, or to fail to achieve a standard reached by other people 42
fall down to fall to the ground 29
fall down to fail because of not being satisfactory for a particular purpose 4
downfall in the sudden failure of a person or organisation, or something that causes this 4, 27
fall for sth informal to be tricked into believing something that is not true 2, 39
fall out to argue with someone and stop being friendly with them 38, 52
falling out to quarrel; an argument 52
fall over if someone falls over, they fall to the ground 3, 37
fall through if a plan or agreement falls through, it falls to happen 27
feel for to feel sorry for someone because they are very unhappy or in a difficult situation 51
fight back to defend yourself when someone or something attacks you or causes problems for you 50
fight off to try hard to get rid of something unpleasant or unwanted, especially an illness or bad emotions 56
figure out to work out; to solve; to understand; to find the answer to something by thinking carefully 69
fill in sth or fill sth in to write the necessary information on an official document (e.g., form, questionnaire) 44
fill in sb or fill sb in to tell someone about the things that have happened while they have not been there, or to give someone the information they need in order to do something 45
fill out sth or fill in sth to write the necessary information on an official document (e.g., form, questionnaire) 44
fill up (sth) or fill (sth) up to become full, or to make something become full 26
find out (sth) or find (sth) out to get information about something because you want to know more about it, or to learn a fact or piece of information 35
finish off sth or finish sth off to complete the last part of something that you are doing 28
finish with to quarrel; to quarrel with; to argue with; to end a romantic relationship with someone 53
fix away informal something that you say in order to tell someone that you are ready for them to start asking you questions, or to start speaking 41
fit in to feel happy in a group of people because you are similar to them 52
fit in sth or fit sth in to find time to do something or see someone 22
fix up (sth) or fix sth up to provide or arrange something for someone 43
fizzle out to gradually end or disappear, especially in a disappointing way 28
flare up to become angry, violent, or argumentative 47
flick through sth to look briefly at the pages of something (e.g., book, magazine) 20
flip through sth to look briefly at the pages of something (e.g., book, magazine) 20
flood out or flood sth out to force someone to leave their home because of floods 61
follow up sth or follow sth up to do something in order to make the effect of an earlier action or thing stronger or more certain 45
fool around to spend time having fun or behaving in a silly way 18
fork out sth or fork sth out to pay or give money for something, especially when you do not want to 48
freshen up to quickly wash yourself so that you feel clean 32, 69
get across to someone or get sth across to give someone or something that you have intended to do or for a long time 7
get away to leave a place or person, often when the situation makes it difficult for you to do this 2, 7
get away to go somewhere to have a holiday, especially because you need to rest 62
get away adj used to escape something or someone 62
get away with sth by getting away with something, successfully even though it is not the best way of doing it 7, 47
get back to sth or get back sth if you get something back, something that you had before is given to you again 47
get back to sb if you get back to someone, you talk to them, usually on the telephone, in order to give them some information that they have asked for, or because you were not able to speak to them before 50
get by if you have just enough money to pay for the things that you need, but nothing more 7
carry away to become so excited about something that you do not control what you say or do and you forget about everything else 51
carry away to start doing something seriously and with a lot of your attention and effort 3

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 189
get in if a train, plane, or other vehicle gets in at a particular time, that is when it arrives 62
gl 83 disinform, Australasian to criticize nonsense 69
got mishap up in sth to become involved in an (adj) bad activity 67
got off (sth) to leave a bus, train, aircraft, or boat 82
got on (sth) to go onto a bus, train, aircraft, or boat 2, 5, 62
got to more people get on, they like each other and are friendly to each other 2, 5, 7
got to continue doing something, especially work 1, 7
got to tolerate sth to start talking about a subject after discussing something else 31
got out to move out of a vehicle 63
got out of shifting sth to avoid doing something that you should do, often by giving an excuse 34
got over sth to begin to feel better after an experience that has made you unhappy 17, 26
got over see can't/couldn't get over sth give sth over with to do and complete something difficult or unpleasant that must be done 7
got round/around get round/around through so manage to talk to someone on the telephone 1, 50
got through to sb to succeed in making someone understand or believe something 31
got to sb informal to make someone feel upset or angry 18
got together (sb) or get (sb) together if two or more people get together, or if someone gets two or more people together, they meet in order to do something in a group or together 7
got (sb) up to wake up when get out of bed, or to make someone do this 58
gotting at sth informal if you ask someone what they are getting at, you are asking them what they mean, usually because they have expressed something indirectly 7
give away sth or give sth away to give something to someone without asking for anything in return 58
give in to finally agree to something that someone wants after a period when you refuse to agree 2, 38
give in to accept that you have been defeated and agree to stop competing or fighting 57
give in sth to give sth away, to give a piece of written work or a document to someone for them to read, judge, or deal with 2, 42
give in sth to give sth out to give something to a large number of people 42
give up (sb) or give (sb) up if you give up a habit [e.g. smoking, drinking] or give up something unhealthy [e.g. cigarettes, alcohol], you stop doing it or having it 26
give up sth or give sth up to stop doing sth, regular activity or a job 28
give up (struggling sth) or give (sth) up to stop doing an activity or piece of work before you have completed it, usually because it is too difficult 28
give up to stop trying to think of the answer to a joke or question 35
go ahead with shifting sth to start to do something or deal with something 8
go about doing sth if someone goes about doing something for a long time, they spend their time behaving badly or doing something that is unpleasant for other people 8
go against sth to do the opposite of what someone has asked or advised you to do 2
go ahead to start to do something 68
go ahead with permission for something to start 68
go along with sth to support an idea, or to agree with someone's opinion 8
go back if schools or students go back, the schools are open and the students start going to lessons again after the holidays 43
go back sth to go back a number of years, they have been friends for that many years or since that time 20
go back on sth to not do something that you promised or said you would do 54
go by if time goes by, it passes 23 bygone old from the past 21
go down to become lower in level 2
go down with sth informal, British to become ill, usually with a disease that is not very serious 56
go for sth to choose something 8
go for sth to try to get or achieve something 19, 57
go for sth to like something or someone 52
go forward to win one stage of a competition and compare in another stage 57
go for sth to compete in a competition, or to do an exam 8
go into sth to describe, discuss, or examine something in a detailed way 21
go off to leave a place and go somewhere else 8
go off if food or drink goes off, it is not good to eat or drink any more because it is too old or bad 8, 60
go off if a warning device [e.g. alarm] goes off, it suddenly makes a loud noise 64
go off if a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires 66
go on to continue to exist or happen 8
go on to continue doing something 8
go on to happen 43
goings on strange or amusing events 4
go on to talk in an annoying way about something for a long time 8
Go on informal something that you say to encourage someone to do something. 8, 41
Go out if a light goes out, it stops giving light. 8
Go out British to leave when you are playing in a sports competition, so that you must stop preparing for the competition. 57
Go out with sb to have a romantic relationship with someone. 32
Go over sth to talk or think about something in order to explain it or make sure that it is correct. 17
Go through sth to experience an unpleasant or difficult situation or event. 2, 8
Go through sth to carefully examine the contents of something or a collection of things in order to find something. 8
Go through sth to carefully read or discuss every part of something in order to make sure that it is correct or acceptable. 17, 20
Go through with sth to do something unpleasant or difficult which you have planned or promised to do. 8
Go together if two types of thing or people go together, they are usually found with each other. 8
Go together if two pieces of clothing or two types of food go together, they look or taste good when you wear or eat them at the same time. 32
Go under if a company or business goes under, it falls financially. 49
Go up if an amount, rate, or standard goes up, it rises. 26
Go with sth if one thing goes with another, they suit each other in the way they look or taste good together. 19, 60
Go without sth to not have something which you usually have. 8
Going-on n a strange or amusing events. 4
Good off informal, American to avoid doing any work. 69
Grow apart if people who are good friends grow apart, they gradually become less friendly, often because they do not have the same interests and opinions any more. 51
Grow on sb informal if something or someone grows on you, you like them more and more, although you did not like them at first. 51
Grow up to gradually change from being a child to being an adult. 53
Hack into sth to get into someone else's computer system without permission in order to look at information or do something illegal. 67
Hand down sth or hand sth down to give or teach something to someone who will be alive after you have died. 55
Hand in sth or hand sth in to give a piece of written work [e.g. essay] to a teacher. 42
Hand out sth or hand sth out to give something to each person in a group of people. 42
Handout n a piece of paper that is given to people who go to a talk or class and which has information on it about the subject dealt with in the talk or class. 57
Hand over sth or hand sth over to give something to someone else. 17
Hang over (sth) or hand (sth) over as give someone else responsibility for or control of something. 45
Hang round sth or hang out to offer something, especially food or drink, to each person in a group of people. 60
Hang about round sth informal to spend time somewhere, usually without doing anything much. 18
Hang on informal to wait, especially be a short time. 22
Hang on informal something that you say when you are confused or surprised by something and you need to think. 41
Hang out informal to spend a lot of time in a particular place, or to spend a lot of time with someone. 22
Hang up to end a telephone conversation, often suddenly, by putting the part of the telephone that you speak into back into its normal position. 56
Hang up sth or hang up to hang something, especially clothes, on a hook. 13
Hang up informal see hang up. 51
Hang up informal a feeling of embarrassment or fear about something, often when it is not necessary to feel that way. 51
Have it out with sb informal to talk to someone about something that they have said or done that has made you angry in order to improve the situation. 54
Have a hang about round if you have someone around, they come to your house for a social visit. 59
Have sb on to persuade someone that something is true when it is not, usually as a joke. 39
Have sb over to prepare an arrangement to do something. 37
Have sb up if you have someone over, they come to your house to visit you. 59
Head off to start a journey or leave a place. 15
Heat up sth or heat sth up to make food hot so that it can be eaten. 60
Heat up (sth) or heat (sth) up to become warm or hot, or to make something warmer or hotter. 26
Help out (sb) or help (sb) out to help someone, especially by giving them money or by doing work for them. 14
help sb off with sth to help someone remove a piece of outer clothing [e.g. coat] 29
help sb on with sth to help someone to put on a piece of clothing. 29
hide away to go to a place where other people will not find you 66
hideaway n a place where someone goes to be alone. 66
hire out sth or hire sth out Brit & Australian to allow someone to use something for a period of time after they have paid you money 49
hit back to criticise or attack someone who has criticised or attacked you 49
hit it off if two or more people hit it off, they like each other and become friendly immediately 52
hold sth against sb to like or respect someone less because they have done something wrong or behaved badly. 48
hold down sth or hold sth down to control the level of something [e.g. prices, costs, inflation] and to prevent it from increasing 17
hold off (sth/delaying sth) to delay something or doing something. 15
hold on to wait for a short time 50
Hold on! something you say to show that you are surprised or confused about something and that you need time to think about it for a short time 47
hold up sth/hold up sth to delay something or someone. 21
hold up sth/hold up sth to steal money from a building [e.g. bank], a person, or a vehicle, by using violence or by threatening to use violence. 67
hold-up n a delay 23
hold-up n when someone steals from someone else using violence or the threat of violence 67
hot up informal if an event or situation heats up, it becomes more exciting and there is a lot more activity 34
hot-up informal to be very worried about something and spend a lot of time thinking about it 51
hurry up to do something more quickly 41
hurry up sth-sth or hurry sth up to make someone do something more quickly, or to make something happen sooner 23
I could do without sth something that you say when something is annoying you or causing problems for you, because your situation at that time makes it difficult for you to deal with it 37
invite sb to do sth or invite sb along to ask someone if they would like to go with you to an event or activity. 55
invite sb to come to your home 3
invite sb back or invite sb back to ask someone to come to your home after you have been out somewhere together. 3
invite sb in to ask someone if they would like to come into your house 3
invite sb out or invite sb out to ask someone to go with you to a place, for example a restaurant or the cinema. 3, 39
invite sb over or invite sb over to ask someone to come to your home 3, 39
jump up or jump sb up to ask someone if they would like to come upstairs 3
join in (sth) to become involved in an activity with other people. 37
jump down sth or jump sth down to write something quickly on a piece of paper so that you remember it 44
jump up and down or jump sth up to mix things together in an untidy way. 31
jump at sth to eagerly accept the chance to do or have something 51
jump out at sb if something jumps out at you, you notice it immediately. 36
keep (sth) at sb to continue working hard at something difficult or something which takes a long time, or to make someone continue to work hard. 46
keep away (sb/sth) or keep (sb/sth) away to not go somewhere or near something, or to prevent someone or something from going somewhere or near something. 21
keep down sth or keep sth down to stop the number, level, or size of something from increasing. 17
keep on at sb to talk to someone about something many times, usually because you want to complain about something they have done or not done. 54
keep on doing sth to continue to do something, or to do something again and again. 23
keep sb from sb to not tell someone about something. 54
keep to sth to do what you have promised or planned to do. 31
keep up to go at the same speed as someone or something that is moving forward, so that you stay level with them. 23
keep up to increase or to make progress at the same speed as something or someone else so that you stay at the same level as them. 37
keep up sth or keep sth up to practice a skill that you learned in the past so that you continue to be good at it. 43
keep it up to continue to do something, especially to work hard or to do good work. 41
key in sth or key sth in to put information into a computer using a keyboard. 65
kick-off n. the time when a football match begins
knock around informal to spend a lot of time with someone, either because they are your friend or because you are having a romantic relationship with them 22
knock sb down or knock sb down to hit someone with a vehicle and injure or kill them 63
knockdown adj. very low (in price) 47
knock out informal to stop working, usually at the end of a day 43
knock off sth or knock sth off (sth) to take a particular amount away from something, especially at a price 48
knock out to defeat a person or team in a competition so that they have to stop taking part in it 57
knockout n. a competition in which only the winners of each stage play in the next stage, until one person or team is the final winner 37
knock over sth or knock sth over to hit or push something or someone, especially accidentally, so that they fall to the ground or onto their side 17, 30
latch on informal, British & Australian to understand something 35
latch on to sth to spend time with someone, especially when they do not want you with them 22
laugh off sth or laugh sth off to laugh about something unpleasant in order to make it seem less important or serious 15
launch into sth to start doing or saying something [e.g. speech, story] in a very enthusiastic way 21
lay into sb to attack or criticise someone in an angry way 40, 69
lay off sb or lay sb off to stop employing someone because they're no work for them to do 45
laze about to relax and enjoy yourself by doing very little 69
lead on or lead sb on to make someone believe something that is not true 67
leak out if secret information leaks out, people who should not know this information find out about it 66
learn on sb informal to try to make someone do what you want by threatening or persuading them 67
leave aside sth or leave sth aside to not discuss or consider a particular subject so that you can discuss a different subject 31
leave behind sth or leave sb/sth behind to leave a place without taking something, or someone with you, either because you have forgotten them or because you cannot take them with you 24
leave out sth or leave sth out to not include someone or something 2, 14
leaves to sth informal to go away from someone so that they do something by themselves or so they can continue what they are doing 45
felt over if an amount of money or food is left over, it remains when the rest has been used or eaten 4, 60
left over to exist from an earlier time 23
leftover adj. existing from an earlier time 23
leftovers n. food that was prepared for a meal but not eaten 4, 60
let down sb or let sb down to disappoint someone by failing to do what you agreed to do or what you were expected to do 65
let off sb or let sb off to not punish someone who has committed a crime or done something wrong, or to not punish someone severely 67
let on to tell someone about something which was supposed to be a secret 54
let out sth or let sth out to allow a person or animal to leave somewhere, especially by opening a locked or closed door 14
let out an excuse or way of avoiding doing something you agreed to do 36
let up informal if bad weather or an unpleasant situation lets up, it stops or improves 3, 64
lie about/around informal to spend time lying down and doing very little 18
lie ahead if an event or situation that will cause problems lies ahead, it will happen in the future 23
lie behind sth to be the real reason for something 25
lie in. British & Australian to stay in bed in the morning longer than you usually do 58
lies in British & Australian to stay in bed in the morning longer than usual 58
lies off to extra or be found in something 36
life off if a spacecraft or aircraft lifts off, it leaves the ground 36
life off the moment when a spacecraft leaves the ground 15
lighten up to become more relaxed and less serious 70
Lighten up informal something you say to tell someone to stop being so serious or annoyed 41
listen in to secretly listen to a conversation, especially a telephone conversation 50
Listen in informal, American something you say to tell people to listen to what you are going to say 69
listened with sth if something is listened with a particular type of thing, it has to contain a list of that thing 32

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 193
live down sth or live sth down: to stop feeling embarrassed about something you have done by waiting until people forget about it. 53
live for sth/to believe that something or someone is the most important thing or person in your life 52
live off sth/to have enough money for the things you need by taking it from a supply of money or from another person 58
live off sth/to only eat a particular type of food 60
live on sth/to have a particular amount of money in order to buy the things you need 58
live on sth/to only eat a particular type of food 60
live through sth/to experience a difficult situation or event 20
live up to sth/to believe that something or something is good enough for you to use 1, 9
live up to sth/to believe that something or someone is good enough for you to use 9
live up to sth/to become more interesting and exciting, or to make something become like this 17
lead down sth or lead sb down sth/to give someone too many things to carry 17
lead up sth/to do a lot of things to a particular person or thing 64
lock yourself away/to go to a room or building where you can be alone, usually so that you can work 21
lock in sth or lock sth in/to prevent someone from leaving a room or building by locking the door 16
look around/to try to find something you want [e.g. job] by asking different people or by looking in different places 9
look at sth/to consider a subject carefully in order to make a decision about it 9
look at sth/to see something quickly and not very carefully 9
look back/to think about or remember something that happened in the past 2
look down on sth/to think that someone is less important than you, or to think that something is not good enough for you to use 1, 9
look for sth/to try to find something or someone, either because you have lost them or because you need them 3
look forward to sth/to feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen 1, 9
look into sth/to discover and examine the facts about a problem or situation 9, 21
look on/to watch an activity or event without becoming involved in it 4, 9
lookout/n a person who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it 4, 9
look out for sth/to carefully watch the people or things around you so that you will notice a particular person or thing 9, 66
lookout for sth/to try to find something you want or do not want to happen 1, 9
look over sth/to look at something quickly and not very carefully 9, 17
look over sth/to look at something quickly and not very carefully 9, 17
look up/to find or look at sth/to try to find something you want or do not want to happen 1, 9
look up/to find or look at sth/to try to find something you want or do not want to happen 1, 9
look up to sb/to respect and admire someone 9
look at sth/to consider a subject carefully in order to make a decision 9, 21
look at sth/to consider a subject carefully in order to make a decision 9, 21
make out sth/to understand something, especially the reason why something has happened 9
make out sth or make sth out/to write all the necessary information on an official document [e.g. cheque, application, ticket] 44
alighted on in th. informal to be involved in an illegal or unpleasant activity 67
mouth off informal to talk about a subject as if you know more than everyone else, or to complain a lot about something 54
move (sth) along if a process moves along, or if you move a process along, it develops in a satisfactory way 46
move in to begin living in a new house or area 58
move in together to start living in the same house as someone you are having a romantic relationship with 59
move out to stop living in a particular house 58
move over to change the place where you are sitting or standing so that there is space for someone else to sit or stand 3, 17, 29
move up British & Australian to move slightly so that there is enough space for someone else to 29
muck about/around informal to waste time doing silly things 22
muddle through to succeed in doing something even though you have difficulties because you do not really know how to do it 27
muddle up shards or muddle up to confuse two people, or things in your mind 34
mug up (sth) or mug (sth) up informal British to pick up try to learn the main facts about a subject, especially before an exam 43
name sb/it after/make sb/it give someone or something the same name as someone or something else 55
narrow down (sth) or narrow down to make something (e.g. list, choice, option) smaller and clearer by removing the things that are less important 36
note down/it or note down to write words or names down so that you do not forget them 17, 44
off-putting adj unattractive or unpleasant 15
outlook n a person who watches an activity or event without becoming involved in it 9
open onto sth if a room, window, or door opens onto a place, it opens to the direction of that place or has a view of it 24
open up (sth) or open (sth) up to start a new shop or business 33
open up to start to talk more about yourself and your feelings 54
opt out to choose not to be part of an activity or arrangement, or to stop being involved with it 37
order sb about to tell someone what they should do all the time 18, 31
outbreak n something unpleasant or difficult to control starts, such as war or disease 66
outrage n a public expression of anger or disagreement 4, 38

English Phrasal Verbs in Use 195
outlier = a shop that is one of many owned by a particular company and that sells the company's goods 49
outpouring = a strong expression of emotion 54
outset = the beginning of something 4, 28
outstanding = adj; extremely good, or of a very high standard 40
oversleep = to sleep longer than you had intended 58
own up to admit that you have done something that is not important 54
pack away sth or pack sth away = to put something into a bag or container, or to put something in a place where it is usually kept 23
packed out = adj; very full of people 11
pack up (sth) or pack (sth) up = to collect your things together and put them into bags or boxes, especially when you have finished doing something 28
pair off = if two people pair off, they start a romantic relationship 52
pause out to develop or happen in a particular way 26
partly ed informal = to have had enough of parties because you have been to so many 70
pause over to die 56
pause by = [time or a period of time (e.g. week)] passes by, it goes past 23
pause for sth/while if someone or something passes for someone or something else, they appear like that person or thing 53
pass off British or American = if an event passes off in a good way, it happens in that way 33
pass on sth or pass sth on to give something to someone else 16
pass on to sth or pass sth on to tell someone something that someone else has told you 31
pass on to die 56
pass round sth or pass (sth) round to offer something to each member of a group of people 60
pause out to become unconscious 56
pay back sth/sth or pay sb/sth back = to pay someone the money that you owe them 47
pay back the money that you owe 47
pay off sth or pay off = if you pay off a debt, you pay back all the money you owe 47
pay off if something that you have done to try to achieve something pays off, it is successful 27
pay someone informal = to give someone the money that you owe them, especially when you do not want to 47
pencil in sth or pencil in to arrange for something to happen or for someone to do something on a particular date, knowing that the arrangement might be changed later 45
phase in sth or phase sth in = to make a new system, process, or law gradually begin to happen or exist 26
phase out sth or phase sth out = to gradually stop using or supplying something 26
phone around/round (sth) to phone several people, often in order to find out information 50, 69
phone (sb) back to telephone someone for the second time or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 20
phone up (sb) or phone (sb) up to telephone someone 50
pick on sb to choose one person from a group of people to criticize or treat unfairly, especially when they are smaller or weaker than you 40
pick up (sth) or pick up (sth) up = to lift something or someone by using your hands 29
pick up (sth) or pick up sth = to collect something that someone who is waiting for you, or to collect something that you have left somewhere or that you have bought 2, 63
pick up a tip when a car, taxi, etc. collects you 48
pick up a small truck with an open back 48
pick up sth or pick up sb up to collect something you have left somewhere or that you have bought 63
pick up sth or pick up sb up to get or buy something when you have gone to a place to do something else 47
pick up sth or pick up sb to buy something 48
pick up sth or pick up sb = to learn a new skill or language by practicing it rather than being taught it 43
pick up something [e.g. business, economy, trade], it improves or increases after a bad period 26
pick up an increase or improvement 48
pick up if the wind picks up, it becomes stronger 61
pick up informal = when you start talking to someone you do not know because you want to have a sexual relationship with them 48
pin down (sb) or pin sth down = to make someone say something unpleasant [e.g. work, bills, losses] pines up, or if you pide it up, you get more and more on it 46
pin down an accident involving several cars 4, 61
pin down sb or pin sb down = to make someone give you exact details or a decision about something 54
plan ahead to make decisions or plans about something you will do or something that might happen in the future 37
1. play back ssth or play ssth back
2. to listen to
3. sound or watch pictures that you have just recorded.
4. play through ssth or play ssth down
5. to try to make
6. people believe that something is not very important, or that it is unlikely to happen.
7. playing at ssth
8. if you ask what someone is playing at, you ask what they are doing, in a way which shows that you are surprised and angry.
9. play-off
10. a game between two teams that have equal points in order to decide which is the winner.
11. play up
12. British & American if someone, especially a child, plays up, they behave badly.
13. play up
14. British & Australian if a machine or part of a machine plays up, it does not work as it should.
15. plug in ssth or plug ssth in, or plug ssth into ssth
16. to connect a piece of electrical equipment to a supply of electricity or to another piece of electrical equipment.
17. point out
18. to make a person notice something or something, usually by telling them where they are or by holding up one of your fingers towards them.
19. point out ssth or point ssth out
20. to tell someone a fact that they did not already know, especially one that is important in the present discussion or situation.
21. polish off ssth or polish ssth off
22. informal to finish something quickly and easily, especially a large amount of food or a piece of work.
23. polish up ssth or polish ssth up
24. to practise and improve your skills or your knowledge of something that you learned in the past but have partly forgotten.
25. pop into
26. informal to go into a place, especially a friend's house, just for a short time.
27. pop out
28. informal to leave the place where you are and go somewhere for a short time.
29. pour down
30. to rain heavily.
31. downpour
32. a sudden, heavy fall of rain.
33. pour in
34. to arrive or enter somewhere in very large numbers.
35. pour into
36. to provide a lot of money for something over a long period.
37. pour out
38. to fill a glass, cup etc. with a drink.
39. pour out
40. to leave a place in large numbers.
41. pour out
42. to pour out your feelings or thoughts, you talk very honestly about what you are feeling or your ideas.
43. pouring
44. a strong expression of emotion.
45. press
46. for ssth
47. to try persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen.
48. pressed for ssth
49. to have very little or not enough of something, especially time or money.
50. press on
51. to continue doing something in a determined way.
52. print out
53. (sth) or print (sth) out
54. to produce a printed copy of a document that has been written on a computer.
55. printout
56. a document that is printed from a computer.
57. pull ahead
58. suddenly get in front of another car or person that was previously driving or running at the same speed as you.
59. pull down
60. ssth or pull ssth down
61. to destroy a building or other structure because it is not being used or is not wanted anymore.
62. pull in
63. if a train pulls in or pulls into a station, it arrives there.
64. pull in
65. or pull into ssth
66. if a car pulls in or pulls into a place, it moves to the side of the road or to another place where it can stop.
67. pull off
68. ssth or pull ssth off
69. to succeed in doing or achieving something difficult.
70. pull out
71. if a train pulls out, it starts to leave a station.
72. pull out
73. to drive onto a road, either from another road or from the side of the road where you have stopped.
74. pull out (sth)’s or pull (sth)’s out
75. to stop being involved in an activity or agreement.
76. pull over
77. to drive a car to the side of the road in order to stop.
78. pull over
79. to recover from a serious illness, or to help someone to do this.
80. pull together
81. to work as a group in order to achieve something.
82. pull yourself together
83. to become calm after being so angry that you were unable to behave in a sensible way.
84. pull up
85. if a car pulls up, it stops, often for a short time.
86. pump up
87. or pump ssth up
88. to fill something with air by using a pump.
89. pump in
90. British & American to roughly calculate that something will cost a particular amount or that something is a particular size or amount.
91. pump across
92. or pump ssth across
93. to explain or express something clearly so that people understand it easily.
94. pump at
95. ssth to try persuade someone, usually someone in authority, to give you something or to allow something to happen.
96. pump back
97. ssth or put ssth back
98. to change the date or time of an event so that it happens later than planned.
99. pump back
100. ssth or put ssth back
101. if you put a watch or clock back, you make it show an earlier time.
put down (sth) or put (sth) down to land in an aircraft, or to make an aircraft land. 11
put down sth or put sth down if you put the phone down, you put the part of the telephone that you speak into back into its usual position after your conversation has ended. 50
put down sb or put sb down to make someone feel stupid or unimportant by criticizing them. 38
put down is an unusual remark that makes someone seem foolish. 34
put forward sth or put sth forward to state an idea or opinion, or to suggest a plan, so that it can be considered or discussed. 39
put forward to change the date or time of an event so that it happens earlier than planned. 33
put forward sth or put sth forward if you put forward a clock or watch, you make it show a later time. 33
put in sth or put sth in to fix new equipment or a new system in the correct place in a room or building. 12
put off sth doing sth or put sth off to decide to arrange or to do something at a later time. 1, 2, 11, 13
put off sb or put sb off to tell someone that you cannot see them or do something for them until a later time. 17
put off sb or put sb off (stb) doing sth to make someone not like someone or something, or not want to do something. 15
put on sth or put sth on to make a device (e.g. lights, fire) work by pressing a switch. 13
put on sth or put sth on to pretend to have a particular feeling, or to behave in a way which is not real or natural for you. 16
put on sth or put sth on to organize a play, show, or competition. 33
put on sth or put sth on to begin to cook food. 60
put on sth or put sth on to put something that sounds or pictures are recorded onto (e.g. CD, video) onto a machine which makes you able to hear or see the recording. 11
put on sth or put sth on (sth) to give someone the telephone so that they can speak to the person who is on it. 50
put on to tolerate sth to tell someone about something or someone that could help them, often something or someone they did not know about before. 11
put out sth or put sth out to make a light stop burning by pressing a switch. 13
put out sth or put sth out to make something that is burning (e.g. fire, cigarette) stop burning. 11, 30
put out sth or put sth out to produce information (e.g. statement, warning, press release) and make it available for everyone to read or hear. 2
put out sth or put sth over to injure a part of your body (e.g. back, shoulder) by making a bone move from its usual place. 56
put out to be annoyed, often because of something that someone has done or said to you. 11
put over sth or put sth over to express an idea clearly so that people understand it. 17, 39
put through sb or put sb through to connect a telephone caller to the person they want to speak to. 30
put sth to suggest an idea or plan to someone so that they can consider it or discuss it. 39
put up sth or put sth up to build a structure (e.g. wall, building, stage) 13
put up sth or put sth up to stick or fasten a piece of paper (e.g. notice, poster) to a wall so that it can be seen. 13
put up sth or put sth up to open something that is folded or rolled up (e.g. test, umbrella) so that it is ready to be used. 11
put up to sb or put sb up to let someone stay in your home for a short period. 58
put up to sth to encourage someone to do something stupid or wrong. 67
put up with sb or sb to accept unpleasant behaviour or an unpleasant situation, even though you do not like it. 1, 11, 19
rain off if a sport or other outside activity is rained off, it cannot start or continue because it is raining. 61
reach down sth or reach sth down to get something that is above your head by reaching with your hand. 29
reach down (sth) or reach (sth) out to stretch your arm in front of you usually in order to get or touch something. 29
reach sth into sb to believe that an article, remark, or situation has a particular importance or meaning, often when this is not true. 23
read sth or read sth out to read something, and say the words aloud so that other people can hear. 44
read through sth or read sth over/through to read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better. 1, 17
read through to read something from the beginning to the end in order to find any mistakes or to understand it better. 17
read up on sth to read a lot about a particular subject in order to learn about it. 44
reply off/upon sth to to reply to something or to do something that you need to do to. 16
revolve around/round sth(n.) if an activity or conversation revolves around something or someone, that thing or person is the main reason for the activity, or the main subject of the conversation 34
ring (phr. back to telephone someone for the second time, or to telephone someone who rang you earlier 1, 20, 50
ring off British & Australian to end a telephone call by putting down the part of the telephone that you speak into 50
rip off sb or rip sb off informal to cheat someone by making them pay too much money for something 4, 48
rip-off n informal something that costs far too much money 4, 48
rise above sth to not allow something bad that is happening or being done to row to upset you or to affect your behaviour 34
root for sb informal to show support for someone in a competition, or to hope that someone will succeed in doing something difficult 19
root out sb or root sth out to find and get rid of the thing or person that is causing a problem 30
rope in sb or rope sb in informal to persuade someone to help you with something, especially when they do not want to 39
rub in sth or rub sth in to put or rub (e.g. statement) onto the surface of something and to rub it so that it goes into the surface 16
rub sth in informal to talk to someone about something which you know they want to forget because they feel bad about it 49
rub out sth or rub sth out to remove writing from something by rubbing it with a piece of rubber or with a cloth 42
rule out sth or rule sth out to decide that something or someone is not suitable for a particular purpose, or to decide that something is impossible 25, 36
run across sb to meet someone you know when you are not expecting to meet them 59
run away to secretly leave a place because you are unhappy there 21
run off sb informal to repeat something, or to tell someone about something, so that they can give their opinion of it or hear it again 37
run off sth or run sth down informal to criticise someone or something, often unfairly 40
run down adj in poor condition or shabby 32
run into sb to meet someone that you know when you did not expect to meet them 21
run into sth if the amount or cost of something runs into thousands, millions etc., it reaches that level 49
run off sth or run off sth to quit easily and quickly with something that is usually difficult to write e.g. poem, speech 15
run off with sb to secretly leave a place with someone in order to live with them or marry them, especially when other people think this is wrong 31
run out to continue for longer than expected 23
run out to use all of something so that there is none left 14
run out if a document or official appointment runs out, the period of time it lasts for comes to an end 22
run over sth or run sth over to be someone or something with a vehicle and drive over them, injuring or killing them 63
run through sth to repeat something in order to practise it or to make sure that it is correct 31
run through a practice or rehearsal 4, 31
run to sth to reach a particular amount, usually a large amount 49
run up against sth if you run up against problems or difficulties, you begin to experience them 34
run up sth or run sth up if you run up a debt e.g. bill, deficit, you do things which cause you to owe a large amount of money 47
save up (sth) or save (sth) up to keep money so that you can buy something with it in the future 47
scare away sth or scare sth away to make a person or animal so frightened that they go away 22
scare through (sth) to manage with a lot of difficulty to succeed in something e.g. exam 43
scare up sth or scare sth up to twist and crush paper or material with your hands 30
scare up (sth) or scare up sth informal to make a mistake, or to damage or spoil something 40
scribble down adj informal unhappily and anxious because of bad experiences 65
scribble sth down or scribble sth down to write something very quickly on a piece of paper 44
scroll across/through (sth) to move or other information across/through a computer screen in order to view a different part of it 65
see about sth to deal with something, or to arrange for something to be done 36
setback n a problem that makes something happen later or more slowly than it should. 30
set off to start a journey. 52
set off sth or set sth off to cause a loud noise or explosion [e.g. bomb, firework, alarm] to begin or happen. 25
set off sth or set sth off to cause a series of events or a lot of activity, often without intending to do this. 25
set out to start a journey. 28, 62
set out to start an activity, especially when you have already decided what you want to achieve. 4
set out sth or set sth out to give all the details of something, or to explain something clearly, especially in writing. 44
set sb off (doing sth) to make someone start to laugh, cry, or talk about something that they often talk about. 23
set up sth or set sth up to start a company or organisation. 13, 49
set-up n the way in which things are organised or arranged. 13, 49
settle down to start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time, usually with the same partner, especially after a period in which you have travelled a lot or changed partners. 13
settle for sth to accept something, often something that is not exactly what you want, or is not the best. 53
settle up to pay someone the money that you owe them. 47
set up sth or sex sth up to make something more exciting than it really is. 70
shake off sth or shake sth off to get rid of an illness or something that is causing you problems. 65
shoot through informal, Australian to leave a place suddenly and often secretly, especially to avoid something. 65
shoot up if the number, amounts, or rate of something above up, it increases very quickly. 66
shop around to compare the price and quality of the same item or service from different shops or companies before deciding which one to buy. 48
show sb around (e.g. house) to go with someone to a place that they have not visited before and show them the interesting parts. 18
show off to try to make people admire your abilities or achievements in a way in which other people find annoying. 40
show off to someone who tries to make people admire them in a way other people find annoying. 45
show out sb or show sb out to lead a visitor who is leaving to the door of a room or building. 74
show up, to arrive, especially at a place where people are expecting you 13
shirt over (sth) or shirt (sth) down, if a factory or business shuts down, or if someone shuts it down, it closes and stops working 17
shut down (sth) or shut (sth) down, if a factory or business shuts down, or if someone shuts it down, it closes and stops working 17
shut (sb) up, to stop talking or making a noise, or to make someone do this 54
sign up, to arrange to take part in an activity 43
sink in, if a fact or idea, especially a surprising or unpleasant one, sinks in, you gradually start to believe it or realise what effect it will have on you 16
sit around (sth), to spend time sitting down and doing very little 18
skimp on sth, to spend enough time or money on something, or not use enough of something 48
slave away, to work very hard with little or no rest 46
sleep in, to sleep longer in the morning than you normally do 58
sleep on sth, if someone sleeps on a decision or problem, they wait until the next day before they decide what to do about it 37
sleep over, to sleep in someone else's house for a night 58
sleepover, a party at which several young people sleep at a friend's house for a night 58
skip off, to leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going 35
slip out, if a piece of information slips out while you are talking to someone, you tell it to them without intending to 35
slip out, to leave a place quietly so that other people do not notice you going 35
slip up, informal, to make a mistake 5
slow down, to become less physically active than you were before 36
slow down (sth/ sb/ thing) or slow (sb/ thing) down, to become slower, or to make something or someone slower 29
slow up (sth/ sb) or slow (sth/ sb) up, to become slower, or to make something or someone slower 29
snap up sth or snap sth up, to buy or get something quickly because it is very cheap or because it is exactly what you want 48
snowed in, if a person or place is snowed in, there is so much snow that it is impossible to travel anywhere or leave that place 61
snowed under, informal, to have so much work that you have problems dealing with it 46
sort out sth or sort sth out, to arrange or organise things which are untidy 14
sort out sth or sort sth out, to make a decision about something by discussing it with someone else or by considering it carefully 1, 56
sort yourself out, informal, British or Australian, to spend time dealing with your personal problems or organising your things 56
spark off sth or spark sth off, if something sparks off an activity [e.g. fighting, violence] or a state, it causes it to suddenly happen or exist 25
speak out, to publicly express your opinions, especially in order to criticise or oppose someone or something 38
speak up, to begin to speak more loudly 31, 50
speak up, to publicly express your opinions about something or someone, especially in order to support them 31
spell out sth or spell sth out, to explain something in detail and in a clear way 31
spit off, a product that develops from another more important product 49
split it out, informal, something you say to encourage someone to tell you something which they do not want to tell you 41
spoon out, informal, to spend a lot of money on something which is very pleasant but which you do not need 48
split up, if two people who are married or who have a romantic relationship split up, they end their marriage or relationship 52
spread out, if a group of people spread out, they move away from each other so that there is a wide space between them 14
spread out sth or spread sth out, to open something that is folded [e.g. map, towel] and put it down flat on a surface 42
spread out, if people or things spread out, they are in different parts of a large area and are not close together 24
spring from sth, to be caused by something 25
squeezing in sth or squeeze sth in, to manage to do something or see someone when you are very busy and do not have much time available 46
stare off, look sth or study sth to get a better idea of something that is considered wrong or harmful 10
stand around, informal, to spend some time standing in a place waiting for someone or doing very little 18
stand by sb to continue to support or help someone when they are in a difficult situation 68
standby, a cheap ticket for a flight or performance which is sold just before the flight or performance if there are any seats available 62
stand down British & Australian to leave an important job or official position so that someone else can do it instead. 43
stand for adj of a letter stands for a word or name, it is the first letter of that word or name and is used to represent it 19
stand for sth British & Australian to compete in an election for an official position, or to try to be elected as a member of an organisation [e.g. parliament] 68
stand in for someone else's job for a short period of time, or to take someone else's place at an event, because that person cannot be there. 33
stand out to be much better than other similar things or people 40 outstanding adj extremely good, or of a very high standard 40
stand out if someone or something stands out, they are very noticeable because they look different or behave differently from other people or things. 32
stand round see stand about
stand up do or stand up to fail to meet someone on purpose, especially someone with whom you were starting to have a romantic relationship. 59
stand up for sth British to defend something that you believe is important [e.g. principle, right], or to defend a person who is being criticised. 68
start off to start a life, existence, or profession in a good way 28
start off to start a journey 62
start up sth or start (sth) up if a business or other organisation starts up, or if someone starts something, it is created and starts to operate. 49
stay ahead to continue to be more advanced and successful than other people. 27
stay away from sth to avoid something that has a bad effect on you. 21
stay behind do not leave a place when other people leave it. 24
stay in to remain at home, especially in the evening. 24
stay on to stay in a place longer than you planned or after other people have left it. 24
stay out to not come home at night, or to come home late. 23
stay out of sth to not become involved in a discussion or an argument. 38
stay over to spend the night somewhere instead of returning to your home or continuing your journey. 17
stay up to go to bed later than normal. 58
steady on British & Australian something that you say in order to tell someone that you think what they are saying is too extreme. 41
step down to leave your job, especially so that someone else can do it. 45
step up sth or step up to do more of an activity or to increase the speed of a process, usually in order to improve a situation. 66
stick around informal to stay somewhere for a period of time. 58
stick at sth to continue to work hard at something even though it is difficult or tiring. 46
stick by sth to continue to support someone when they are having problems. 68
stick out if part of something sticks out, it comes out beyond the edge or surface of something. 12
stick out if a quality or characteristic of someone or something sticks out, it is very easy to notice. 22
stick together informal if two or more people stick together, they support each other, especially when they are in a difficult situation. 38
stick up for sb informal to defend a person when they are being criticised. 38
stick with sth to do or use something as you had planned and not change to something else, or to continue doing something even though it is difficult. 26
stick with it informal to continue doing something even though it is difficult. 29
step up sth or step up to cause arguments or bad feeling between people, usually on purpose. 48
stack up to buy a lot of something, often foolish or drink. 48
stop off to visit a place for a short time when you are going somewhere else. 62
stop over to stop somewhere for a period of time when you are on a long journey. 62
stopover is a short stay in a place that you make while you are on a longer journey somewhere else. 62
stressed-out adj very worried and anxious. 70
stretch away if an area of land stretches away, it continues over a long distance. 24
sum up (sth) or sum (sth) up, to describe briefly the most important facts or characteristics of something or someone. 44
sweep out sth or sweep sth out informal, British & Australian to discover what someone or something is really like, or to find out how a machine or piece of equipment works. 68
sweep up (sth) or sweep (sth) up to remove rubbish or dirt, usually from the floor, using a brush. 13

202 English Phrasal Verbs in Use
swell up if a part of your body swells up, it becomes larger or rounder than usual, often because of an illness or injury.

switch off (sth) or switch (sth) off to turn off an electrical device (e.g. light, radio) or an engine by using a switch.

switch on (sth) or switch (sth) on to turn on an electrical device (e.g. light, radio) or an engine by using a switch.

swot up (sth) or swot (sth) up informal, British or Australian: to learn as much as you can about something, especially before an exam.

tag along to go somewhere with someone, especially when they have not asked you to go with them.

tailback a long line of traffic that is moving very slowly.

take after sb to have a similar appearance or character as an older member of your family.

take apart sth or take sth apart to separate something into its different parts.

take around ground sb or take sb around ground (sth) to walk through a building or to visit a place with someone, showing them the most interesting or important parts.

take aside sb or take sb aside to separate someone from a group of people so that you can speak to them privately.

take away sth or take sth away if you take one number away from another one, you subtract the first number from the second.

take away sth or take sth away British or Australian: to buy food in a shop or restaurant and eat it somewhere else.

takeaway a meal that you can buy and take somewhere else to eat, or a shop where you can buy this food.

take back sth or take sth back to return something to the person or organisation that you borrowed or bought it from.

take back sth or take sth back if a shop takes back goods that it has sold to you, it agree to give you money or goods for them because they are damaged or unsuitable.

take back sth if you said something you was wrong.

take back sb or take sb back if something takes you back, it makes you remember a period or an event in the past.

take down sth or take sth down to write something, especially something that someone says.

take in sb or take sb in to let someone stay in your house.

take in sth or take sth in to look at something carefully, noticing all the details.

take in sth or take sth in to understand the meaning or importance of news or information, or to understand and remember facts.

take in sth or take sth in if a boat takes in water, water enters the boat through a hole.

take in sth or take sth in to make a piece of clothing narrower by sewing the seam from the edges and sewing closer to the middle of the material.

take off sth or take sth off to remove something, especially something that you are wearing.

take off sth or take sth off to spend some time away from your work.

take off sth if an aircraft, bird, or insect takes off, it moves from the ground and begins to fly.

take off sth when an aircraft leaves the ground and begins to fly.

take off to suddenly become successful or popular.

take off to suddenly leave somewhere, especially without telling anyone that you are going.

take off sth or take sth off (sth) to subtract a particular amount from a total.

take off sth or take sth off to copy the way a person behaves, or to copy the way something is done, either in order to make people laugh.

take on sb or take sb on to begin to employ someone.

take on sth or take sth on to accept a particular job or responsibility and begin to do what is needed.

take out sth or take sth out to get money from a bank.

take out sth or take sth out to arrange to get an official document (e.g. insurance policy) from an organisation or court of law.

take out sth on sb or take sth out on sb to treat someone badly because you are upset or angry, even though they have done nothing wrong.

take sth out of sb to make someone feel very tired.

take over (sth) or take (sth) over to begin doing a job or being responsible for something that someone else was doing or was responsible for before you.

take over sth or take sth over to get control of a company by buying most of its shares (= the equal parts into which the ownership of the company is divided).

takeover an act of gaining control of a company.

take over to become more successful or powerful than something or someone else that is involved in the same type of activity.
think ahead to think carefully about what might happen in the future, or to make plans for things you want to do in the future. 37
think back to think about things that happened in the past. 21
think over sth or think sth over to think carefully about an idea or plan before making a decision. 3, 37
think through sth or think sth through to think carefully about something you are planning to do and to consider the possible results of it. 3, 37
throw yourself into sth to start doing something with a lot of enthusiasm and energy. 21, 69
throw out sb or throw sb out to force someone to leave a college, school, house or organization. 41
throw up sth or throw (sth) up to vomit. 36, 106
thrown together if people are thrown together in a situation, that situation causes them to meet each other and to get to know each other. 34
tidy away sth or tidy sth away British or Australian to put things in cupboards and drawers, etc., after you have been using them. 21
tidy up (sth) or tidy (sth) up to make a room or a group of things tidy by putting things in the correct place. 5, 13
tie in with sth if one event ties in with another, it is planned so that both events happen at the same time. 33
tie up sth or tie sth up to put string or rope around something so that it is fastened together. 29
tie up informal to be busy so that you are unable to see or speak to anyone else or go anywhere. 40
tip off or tip sb off to warn someone secretly about something that will happen so that they can take action or prevent it from happening. 67
tip-off a secret warning or piece of secret information. 67
tone down sth or tone sth down to make 1 piece of writing, a speech, or a performance less offensive or less critical. 44
top up sb or top sb up to put more drink into someone's glass or cup. 60
top-up a more drink poured into a glass or cup. 60
touch down when an aircraft touches down, it lands on the ground. 62
touch down when an aircraft lands. 62
touch down when an aircraft touches down to find someone or something after searching for them in many different places. 35
trigger off sth or trigger sth off to make something suddenly begin, often a difficult or violent situation. 23
try on sth or try on to put on a piece of clothing to find out whether it fits you or whether you like it, especially before buying it.

try on sth or try on to test something in order to find out if it works or to decide whether you like it.

touched away to be in a quiet or hidden place where nobody else will find you. for example: a girl sat in the room but touched away.

turn down sth or turn sth down to refuse an offer or request.

turn in to send or hand over something to an office or authority.

turn off sth or turn sth off to close something or to switch something off.

travel along to travel slowly.

turn off sth (the) to leave the road you are travelling on and travel another way.

turn sb or turn sb off (sth) to make someone decide that they are not interested in something.

turn off sth or turn sth on to play something or to turn something on.

turn on sth or turn sth on to make someone decide that they are not interested in something.

turn on sth to attack someone in order to criticise them.

turn off sth or turn sth over to turn something on or off in a piece of equipment.

turn on sth to make someone be able to do something.

turn off sth or turn sth on to add something.

turn sth up to make something louder.

turn up to make someone hear something.

turn down sth to make something smaller.

turn up to increase something.

turn over sth to put something into a computer.

turn on sth to make something work.

turn over sth to think about something.

turn over sth to make something larger.

turn down sth to make something smaller.

turn over sth to think about something.
wear out (sth) or wear (sth) out: use something so much that it becomes weak or damaged and cannot be used any more, or to become weak and damaged in this way.

weigh down sb or weigh sb down: if you are weighed down with something, you are carrying too much of it.

weigh on/upon sb/sth: if a problem or responsibility weighs on you, it makes you worried or unhappy.

weigh up sth or weigh sth up: to think carefully about the advantages and disadvantages involved in a situation before making a decision.

white away sth or white sth away: to spend time in a relaxed way because you are waiting for something or because you have nothing else to do.

wind down (sth) or wind (sth) down: if a business or organisation winds down, or if someone winds it down, the amount of work it does is gradually reduced until it closes completely.

wind down: to gradually relax after doing something that has made you feel tired or worried.

wind up: to finally be in a particular place, state, or situation, especially without having planned it.

wind up doing sth: to finally do something, especially without having planned to.

wind up or wind sth up: informal, British to tell someone something that is not true in order to make a joke.

work at/sth doing sth: to try hard to achieve something or improve something.

work off sth or work sth off: to get rid of an unpleasant feeling [e.g. aggression, anger] by doing something energetic.

work on/upon sth: to spend time working in order to produce or repair something.

work out sth or work sth out: to do a calculation to get an answer to a mathematical problem.

work out sth or work sth out: to understand something or to find the answer to something by thinking about it.

work out: to exercise in order to improve the strength or appearance of your body.

work through sth or work sth through: to deal with a problem or difficulty by talking about it in detail.

work towards sth: to try hard to achieve something.

wrap up sth or wrap sth up: to cover something in paper, cloth, or another material, especially in order to give it to someone as a present or in order to protect it.

wrap up (sth) or wrap (sth) up: to dress in warm clothes, or to dress someone in warm clothes or cover them with material that protects them from the cold.

write out of sth: informal, to avoid doing something that other people think you should do, often in a dishonest way.

write down sth or write sth down: to write something on a piece of paper so that you do not forget it.

write off sth or write sth off: to accept that an amount of money [e.g. debt, investment] has been lost or will never be paid.

write off sth or write sth off: to damage a vehicle so badly that it cannot be repaired.

write-off: a vehicle that is too badly damaged to be repaired.

write a sth to write sth out: to write something [e.g. report, list] on paper, often in order to write it in a better or more complete way.

write off sth or write sth off: to write information on a document [e.g. cheque, prescription] so that it can be used.

write up sth or write sth up: to write something on paper or on a computer in a complete or final form, often using notes you have made.

zoom in: if a camera zooms in, it starts to show a clearer and more detailed picture of something, as if the camera was moving closer to that thing.

zoom out: if a camera zooms out, it starts to show someone or something in less detail, as if the camera was moving away from that person or thing.
English Phrasal Verbs in Use

English Phrasal Verbs in Use is a vocabulary book for good intermediate level learners and above. It is primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice text but it can also be used for classroom work.

English Phrasal Verbs in Use

- 70 easy-to-use two-page units: phrasal verbs are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a range of practice exercises on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains approximately 1,000 phrasal verbs in typical contexts using tables, charts, short texts and dialogues.
- Contains a Mini dictionary with easy-to-understand definitions and cross references to units in the book.
- Provides valuable information about appropriate usage.
- Promotes good learning habits with study tips and follow-up tasks.
- Contains a comprehensive, student-friendly answer key.
- Includes the most frequently used phrasal verbs from a corpus of written and spoken English and from the Cambridge Phrasal Verbs Dictionary.

CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 600 million words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a major resource for language learning research.

REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE

Also available: English Idioms in Use
Cambridge Phrasal Verbs Dictionary
English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate

Cambridge UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org
ISBN-10: 0-521-32728-7
£13.50